THAI

BASIC COURSE

Volume 2

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE
# THAI BASIC COURSE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Volume 2

**LESSON 21.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASIC DIALOG</th>
<th>327</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Questions on the Basic Dialog</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on the Basic Dialog</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Responses to paj jannaaj</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Use of phaa... paj and aw... paj</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. maa naan leew Used to Indicate &quot;Action long in Process&quot;</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOCABULARY</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LESSON 22.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASIC DIALOG</th>
<th>347</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notes on the Basic Dialog</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. thii in Dates</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. jaak + hâj + Verb Phrase</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOCABULARY</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LESSON 23.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASIC DIALOG</th>
<th>369</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notes on the Basic Dialog</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar Notes</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Aspect Particles (juu, dâj, lëew)</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thammaj, Used to Indicate 'purpose' or 'explanation'</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. thyn with thammaj</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRILLS</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPREHENSION EXERCISES</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXERCISES</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOCABULARY</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 24.
BASIC EPISODE (Part I) .................................................. 385
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .......................... 385
DRILLS ........................................................................... 386
BASIC EPISODE (Part II) .............................................. 394
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) ....................... 395
EXERCISES ...................................................................... 395
VOCABULARY ................................................................ 396

LESSON 25.
BASIC DIALOG ................................................................. 397
Vocabulary Notes ............................................................ 398
DRILLS ............................................................................ 400
EXERCISES ..................................................................... 414
VOCABULARY .................................................................. 414

LESSON 26.
BASIC DIALOG ................................................................. 416
Notes on the Basic Dialog ............................................. 417
Grammar Notes .............................................................. 417
1. hâj + Object + Recipient .......................................... 418
2. Distributive Constructions ......................................... 418
3. kô in Parallel Sentence Constructions ....................... 419
4. than + Classifier Phrase .............................................. 419
5. Question + dîi as a Request for Advice ....................... 419
DRILLS ............................................................................ 420
EXERCISES ..................................................................... 439
VOCABULARY .................................................................. 440

LESSON 27.
BASIC DIALOG ................................................................. 442
Notes on the Basic Dialog ............................................. 443
Grammar Notes .............................................................. 443
1. hâj (all uses) ............................................................. 443
2. book and Other Verbs with hâj as Causative ............... 444
3. eên as Subject Modifier .............................................. 444
DRILLS ............................................................................ 445
EXERCISES ..................................................................... 469
VOCABULARY .................................................................. 470

LESSON 28.
BASIC DIALOG ................................................................. 472
Grammar Notes .............................................................. 473
THAI BASIC COURSE

1. Reduplicated Stative Verbs in Affirmative Requests .............................................. 473
2. งสก in Statements of Negation or Contradiction ................................................. 473
3. น่าน / น้า as a Comment ........................................................................ 474
4. Use of รี, (รี, รี) in Request ........................................................................ 474
5. ถ้า เกลว กา to Indicate Preference for a Particular Course of Action .................. 474

DRILLS ............................................................................................................. 475

EXERCISES ..................................................................................................... 484

VOCABULARY ................................................................................................. 485

LESSON 29.

BASIC DIALOG ............................................................................................... 487
Notes on the Basic Dialog and Other Notes ......................................................... 488
Grammar Notes ................................................................................................. 489
1. แต and แล as Completive Verbs ........................................................................ 489
2. ร้ as Voluntary Choice Question Word ........................................................... 489
3. ร่ ล as 'Past time' Question Word ................................................................ 490
4. ผ in Suggestions ............................................................................................ 490
5. ดี as a Sentence Connective ......................................................................... 490

DRILLS ............................................................................................................. 491

EXERCISES ..................................................................................................... 515

VOCABULARY ................................................................................................. 516

LESSON 30.

BASIC EPISODE (Part I) ....................................................................................... 518
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .............................................................. 519

BASIC EPISODE: A VISIT TO THE SUNDAY MARKET .................................. 519
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) ............................................................ 520
Grammar Notes ................................................................................................. 521
1. ผา in Time Constructions ............................................................................. 521
2. แต and คพ Compared in Usage ................................................................... 522

DRILLS ............................................................................................................. 523

VOCABULARY ................................................................................................. 529

LESSON 31.

BASIC DIALOG ............................................................................................... 530
Grammar Notes ................................................................................................. 531
1. ผา with ผก / ผ้ / ผก ................................................................................. 531
2. ผก after Stative Verbs ................................................................................... 532
3. ผก + ผกก / ผก ......................................................................................... 533

DRILLS ............................................................................................................. 534

EXERCISES ..................................................................................................... 550

VOCABULARY ................................................................................................. 551
LESSON 37.
BASIC DIALOG ........................................... 647
Vocabulary Notes ....................................... 648
Grammar Notes .......................................... 650
  1. Verbs of Measurement with Metric Classifiers .. 650
  2. An Optional Transformation ........................ 650
Chart I: Dimensions ................................... 651
DRILLS .................................................. 652
EXERCISES ............................................. 661
VOCABULARY ............................................ 662

LESSON 38.
BASIC DIALOG ........................................... 666
Vocabulary Notes ....................................... 667
Grammar Notes .......................................... 670
  1. Noun Classifiers .................................... 670
  2. Nominalization (thî1 + VP) ......................... 673
DRILLS .................................................. 673
EXERCISES ............................................. 682
VOCABULARY ............................................ 682

LESSON 39.
BASIC DIALOG ........................................... 687
Grammar Notes .......................................... 688
  1. Types of Noun Phrases:
     (a) Noun + Stative Verbs ............................ 688
     (b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verbs ............ 689
DRILLS .................................................. 690
EXERCISES ............................................. 712
VOCABULARY ............................................ 713

LESSON 40.
BASIC DIALOG ........................................... 716
Vocabulary Notes ....................................... 717
Grammar Notes .......................................... 719
  1. châng in Compounds ................................ 719
  2. Completive Verbs ................................... 719
  3. Pronoun Immediately After its Antecedent ...... 720
4. Constructions with جَيْم ............................. 720
5. Constructions with فَاك .............................. 721
6. ท่าน ฉัน ฯ + Materials .............................. 721
   DRILLS ................................................. 722
EXERCISES ............................................... 734
VOCABULARY .............................................. 736
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

21.0 BASIC DIALOG: Planning a Trip to the Floating Market

A: wanthī cèt meesāa ní
    pen wanjūt
    khun wāan máj

B: wanthī cèt tron kawan
    araj khráp

A: wancan
B: ṣán phôm wāan khráp
    khun mii thúrá araj rĕkhráp

A: jàak ca chuan paj thīaw
    talàat náam

B: dīi thīdiaw khráp
    phôm jàak paj maa naan lēsw,
    tēs mâj mii ookaát
    raw ca paj kan jānaj khráp

A: ca nān rót paj bāan phīan
    phôm kōon, lēsw ca paj lōn
    rya thīnān

B: bāan khāw jùu rim khīcoon
    rĕkhráp

A: khráp
    khāw ca phaa raw paj duu
    talàat náam

April 7th is a holiday.
Are you free?
What day of the week is the 7th?
Monday.
Then I'm free.
You have something in mind?
I'd like to invite you to go to the Floating Market.
Very good.
I've been wanting to go for a long time, but haven't had the chance.
How shall we go?
We'll go by car to the house of a friend of mine and then get in a boat there.
His house is on the edge of the canal, eh?
Right.
He will take us to see the Floating Market.
B: raw ca phóp kan thîinâj
Where'll we meet?

A: phôm ca paj râp khun thîi bân
weelaa s̀on moön cháaw
I'll pick you up at home at 8 a.m.

B: phôm khuan ca aw araj paj bânâŋ
What should I take with me?

A: aw ṭeân paj s̀y khôn kàp
tîînthàajrüup k̀ phoc lësw
khrâp
Take some money for shopping and your camera. That'll be enough.

21.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC DIALOG

1. khun A kàp khun B ca paj thîaw thîinâj kan
2. kháw ca paj kan m̀yaràj
3. khraj chuan khraj
4. khun B jàak paj thîaw talàat náam m̀aj
5. kháw ca paj kan jâŋnjaj
6. khraj ca phaa kháw paj duu talàat náam
7. khun B bòok hâj khun A aw araj paj bânâŋ

21.2 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) wàañ when used with people means 'free' in the sense of 'unoccupied, at leisure, not busy'.

b) tron kàp (ka) means 'correspond to, agree with, coincide with' and it is used to indicate correspondence in time, such as the date with the day of the week, years of the Christian era with those of the Buddhist, etc.
c) cheen 'to invite' is used for formal invitations. It carries the meaning that the person issuing the invitation is acting as the host.

chuan 'to invite' is less formal. It indicates that the person making the request is urging someone to join him in some activity.

21.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The question pəj maa 'How are you going?' can be answered in several ways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Vehicle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) pəj maa</td>
<td>rótfaj (No destination given) 'train'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) nān lōn khūn khāp thīp</td>
<td>rōt túktūk rya khryāñbin rōtjon càkrajaan pəj maa + Destination '3 wheeled bus' 'boat' 'plane' 'car' 'bicycle'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) bin deen</td>
<td>pəj maa + Destination 'to fly' 'to walk'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) pəj maa + Destination + dōoj</td>
<td>rōtmee 'bus'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The construction with dōoj (4) is used largely in written language or formal speech.
b) The verb phaa 'to escort, to take' normally has sentence complements as indicated in the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>kháw phaa...</th>
<th>raw paj...</th>
<th>raw duu talàat náam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kháw phaa raw paj duu talàat náam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'He escorted us to (go see) the Floating Market.'

phaa is used when referring to human beings. When objects are referred to aw 'to take,' is used. When the direction of the action is away from the speaker paj is used with phaa or aw; when it is toward the speaker, maa.

Observe the following construction with aw:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>kháw aw ṇeen</th>
<th>ṇeen maa...</th>
<th>súy khǒŋ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kháw aw ṇeen maa súy khǒŋ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'He brought money for buying things.'

On occasion Thai speakers may use aw... paj/maa instead of phaa... paj/maa when referring to human beings.

c) When the Verb Phrase maa naan lézăw is added to a sentence, it indicates that the action referred to in the sentence has been in process for a long period of time and is still going on. (See 23.2.)
21.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>maa</th>
<th>naan</th>
<th>lésw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phôm jàak phôp khun maa naan lésw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I want meet you come long time already)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.'

b) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wanníi pen</td>
<td>wanníi wan araj</td>
<td>wan can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wancan</td>
<td>phrûnníi lâ</td>
<td>wan ankhaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mûawaanníi lâ</td>
<td>wan aathít</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.  mywaćawaannyai  
    pen wansåw  
    wannii wan araj  
    phר unmistíi lâ  
    mѷawaannyai lâ  
    lёsw maryynníi lâ  
    Yesterdsay was Saturday.  
    What day is today?  
    Tomorrow?  
    Yesterday?  
    The day after tomorrow?  
    Sunday.  
    Monday.  
    Saturday.  
    Tuesday.

3.  phร unmistíi pen  
    wan phàryhät  
    wannii wan araj  
    mѷawaannyai lâ  
    phร unmistíi lâ  
    lёsw maryynníi lâ  
    Tomorrow is Thursday.  
    What is today?  
    Yesterday?  
    Tomorrow?  
    And the day after tomorrow?  
    Wednesday.  
    Tuesday.  
    Thursday.  
    Friday.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.  kháw chuan phǿm paj thǿw talàat nám  
    He invited me to go to the Floating Market.

2.  kháw chuan phǿm paj thamñaan kàp kháw  
    He asked me to go work for him.

3.  phǿm chuan kháw khuj ryân myañthaj  
    I invited him to converse about Thailand.

4.  phanrajaa khun chuan phanrajaa phǿm paj sỳykhǿn phร unmistíi  
    Your wife asked my wife to go shopping tomorrow.
5. phâyân phôm chuan phôm paj sýy bân klâj klâj ka khâw
   My friend tried to talk me into buying a house near him.

6. khâw chuan phôm thaan lâw thîî bân
   He invited me to have a drink at his house.

7. phôm ca chuan phâyân phâyân paj thaan khâaw thîî bân
   I'm going to invite some friends to eat at my house.

d) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phôm jàak paj maa naan lêsw</td>
<td>I have been wanting to go for a long time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. phôp khun
   phôm jàak phôp khun maa naan lêsw
   I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.

2. hën khâw
   phôm jàak hën khâw maa naan lêsw
   I have been wanting to see her for a long time.

3. thàam khun
   phôm jàak thàam khun maa naan lêsw
   I have been wanting to ask you (that) for a long time.

4. bòok khâw
   phôm jàak bòok khâw maa naan lêsw
   I have been wanting to tell him (that) for a long time.

5. phûut ryanñî
   phôm jàak ca phûut ryanñî ka khun maa naan lêsw kàp khun
   I have been wanting to talk about this matter with you for a long time.

333
### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>'How are you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>going?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rotmee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>By bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rtoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>By car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rotfaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>By train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rto tkxksi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By taxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>By boat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. paj jannaaj</td>
<td>paj rya khrjan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. paj jannaaj</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>paj rto smlao.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By smlor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### f) Response Drill

| Cue               | Question          | Response        |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. rót            | paj jannaaj       | paj rót         |
| 2. rót tkxksi     | paj jannaaj       | paj rót tkxksi  |
| 3. rotfaj         | paj jannaaj       | paj rotfaj      |
| 4. khrjan bin     | paj jannaaj       | paj khrjan bin  |
| 5. rya phyan      | paj jannaaj       | paj rya         |
| 6. rotmee         | paj jannaaj       | paj rotmee      |
| 7. rót            | paj jannaaj       | paj rót phyan   |
| 8. rót samlao     | paj jannaaj       | paj samlao      |
g) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān rót paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'How are you</td>
<td>nān rót mee paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going?'</td>
<td>nān rót theksǐi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>khap rót paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān rya paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>bin paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>thlip cakkrajaan paj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

h) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nān rót</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān rót paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nān rót mee</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān rót mee paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nān theksǐi</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān theksǐi paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khap rót</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>khap rót paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nān rya</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>nān rya paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bin</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>bin paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thlip cakkrajaan</td>
<td>paj jannaj</td>
<td>thlip cakkrajaan paj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. A: cháaw cháaw, khun paj thamñaan jaŋŋaj
   How do you go to work mornings?
   
   B: phôm khàp rót paj
   I drive.

2. A: phanrajaa khɔŋ khun paj thamñaan jaŋŋaj
   How does your wife go to work?
   
   B: phôm paj sɔŋ khàw
   I take her.

3. A: lûuksaaw khɔŋ khun paj roorriyan jaŋŋaj
   How does your daughter go to school?
   
   B: khàw paj rót phyän
   She goes in a friend's car.

4. A: phyän khun khonnán paj (ajúttahjay) jaŋŋaj
   How does that friend of yours go to Ayuthaya?
   
   B: khàw nāŋ rya paj.
   By boat.

5. A: naaj khɔŋ khun ca paj ameerikaa jaŋŋaj
   How is your boss going to America?
   
   B: khàw ca bin paj
   He'll fly.

6. A: thammadaa, khun maa roorriyan jaŋŋaj
   How do you usually come to school?
   
   B: phôm deen maa.
   I walk.
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. A: phyân khɔɔŋkhun maa roonrian jæŋæj
   How does your friend come to school?

   B: khàw maa rótmee.
   By bus.

8. A: khun coɔŋ maa roonrian jæŋæj
   How does John come to school?

   B: khàw thlip càkkrajaan maa
   He rides a bike.

j) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun coɔŋ thlip</td>
<td>khun coɔŋ maa roonrian</td>
<td>khàw thlip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>càkkrajaan</td>
<td>jæŋæj</td>
<td>càkkrajaan maa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maa roonrian</td>
<td>How did John come to school?</td>
<td>He rode a bike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phanrajaa khun</td>
<td>khun cim maa roonrian</td>
<td>phanrajaa khàw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cim maa sɔŋ sɔamii</td>
<td>jæŋæj</td>
<td>maa sɔŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khàw thûkwan</td>
<td>How did Jim come to school?</td>
<td>His wife brought him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun sùnthoon</td>
<td>khun sùnthoon</td>
<td>khàw { bin paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bin paj ameerikaa</td>
<td>paj jæŋæj</td>
<td>paj kh्रαŋbin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How did Mr. Sunthorn go?</td>
<td>He flew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun thɔɔm nàŋ</td>
<td>khun thɔɔm</td>
<td>khàw { nàŋ rya paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rya paj jûrdœp</td>
<td>paj jæŋæj</td>
<td>paj rya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How did Tom go?</td>
<td>He went by boat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. khun praphâat nân rôt mee paj thamnaan jannaj
   khun praphâat paj thamnaan jannaj
   khâw nân rôt mee paj rôt mee
   How did Prapas go to work?
   By bus.

6. chaawnaa deen paj naa
chaawnaa paj naa jannaj
khâw deen paj jannaj
How did the farmer to the field?
He walked.

7. phanrajaa khâw nân sâmloôo paj talâat jannaj
phanrajaa khâw paj talâat jannaj
khâw nân rôt sâmloôo paj
How did his wife go to the market?
By samlor.

k) Substitution Drill (Use Chart I with this Drill.)

Cue Pattern
khâw kamlañ khûn rôt
He's getting in (to) the car.

1. rôt mee
khâw kamlañ khûn rôt mee
He's boarding the bus.

2. rôt faj
khâw kamlañ khûn rôt faj.
He's boarding the train.

3. khryânbin
khâw kamlañ khûn khryânbin
He's boarding the plane.

4. rôt sâmloôo
sâmloôo
He's getting into the samlor.
THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

khāw kamlan̄ khûn rót

khāw kamlan̄ loŋ (càak) rót

khāw kamlan̄ loŋ rya

khāw kamlan̄ khûn căak rya
1) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khúw kamlan lon rót</td>
<td>He's getting out of the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. rótmite</td>
<td>khúw kamlan lon (càak) rótmite. He's getting out of the bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. rótfaï</td>
<td>khúw kamlan lon (càak) rótfaï He's getting out of the train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khryâñbin</td>
<td>khúw kamlan lon (càak) khryâñbin He's disembarking from the plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

m) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khúw phaa raw pai duu talâat nàam</td>
<td>He took us to see the Floating Market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pai thîaw</td>
<td>khúw phaa raw pai thîaw talâat nàam He took us on a trip to the Floating Market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. chiarmaï</td>
<td>khúw phaa raw pai thîaw chiarmaï He took us on a trip to Chiangmaï.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pai than</td>
<td>khúw phaa raw pai than aahshan thîi ráan aahshan thîi ráan He took us to eat at that restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ma thaan aahshan</td>
<td>khúw phaa raw ma thaan aahshan thîinî thîinî He took us to eat here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. sylv kwon
khaw phaa raw maa sylv kwon thinfii
He took us shopping here.

6. maa loŋ rya
khaw phaa raw maa loŋ rya thinfii
He took us into the boat.

7. maa sön
khaw phaa raw maa sön thinfii
He took us here.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue                  Pattern
khaw aw nانsyy paj thinfii
He took the books over there.

1. kawii
khaw aw kawii paj thinfii
He took the chairs over there.

2. həŋnoon
khaw aw kawii paj həŋnoon
He took the chairs into the bedroom.

3. nанsyy
khaw aw nанsyy paj həŋnoon
He took the books into the bedrooms.

4. bân
khaw aw nанsyy paj bân
He took the books home.

5. kləŋthāajrûup
khaw aw kləŋthāajrûup paj bân
He took the camera home.

6. thii râan
khaw aw kləŋthāajrûup paj thii râan
He took the camera to the shop.
o) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháw aw nánsỳy maa thíníî</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He brought the books here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. kâwîî kháw aw kâwîî maa thíníî  
He brought the chairs here.

2. hôngníî kháw aw kâwîî maa hôngníî  
He brought the chairs into this room.

3. aahǎan kháw aw aahǎan maa hôngníî  
He brought the food into this room.

4. klônthàajrûup kháw aw klônthàajrûup maa hôngníî  
He brought a camera into this room.

p) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháw aw aahǎan maa thaan (thíníî)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He brought food to eat here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. nêen, sỳy khôn kháw aw nêen maa sỳy khôn  
He brought money for shopping.

2. nánsỳy, àan kháw aw nánsỳy maa àan  
He brought books to read.

3. rôt, kès kháw aw rôt maa kès  
He brought cars to be repaired.

342
4. klënþàaj rûup, khâw aw klënþàajrûup maa thàaj rûup thàaj rûup  
   He brought a camera for picture taking.
5. pàakaa, khûñ an khâw aw pàakaa maa khûñ  
   He brought a pen to write with.

Change thînîî to thînîôn and repeat the drill using paj  
instead of maa.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mîi thûrá araj lè  Do you have something in mind?
2. mîi khamthõam araj máj  Any questions?
3. mîi khwaamhên araj máj  Any comments?
4. rûucâk khraj máj  Recognize anybody?
5. wanjût, ca paj nûj rûplâaw  Are you going anywhere this  
    holiday?
6. ca kin araj máj  Would you like something to eat?

21.5 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES

Listen to the episodes and answer the questions:

a) khun coon nân rya paj ajûttajaa . khâw loŋ thîi thâa  
   phrácan . khâw khûñ rya thîi talàat ajûttajaa

1. khun coon paj nûj
2. khâw paj jaŋnaj
3. khâw loŋ rya thînâj
4. khâw khûñ rya thînâj
b) míssis brawn nāŋ théskaŋ1 paj pratuunáam. kháw khýn rót thíí slíjësk râatprasôŋ. kháw lôŋ rót thíí nâa jüusôom

1. míssis brawn paj nâj
2. kháw paj jaŋnaj
3. kháw khýn rót thínâj
4. kháw lôŋ rót thínâj

c) míste samít paj bân khun phôc khun méê klâj klâj kâp bôssatâñ. kháw khýn khrynâñbin thíí wôochintân. kháw lôŋ thíí bôssatâñ

1. míste samít paj nâj
2. kháw paj jaŋnaj
3. kháw khýn khrynâñbin thínâj
4. kháw lôŋ thínâj

21.6 EXERCISES

Using the format of the basic dialog as a guide plan an excursion to some point of interest. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Date and time of the trip,
2. The place,
3. The means of conveyance,
4. The persons included,
5. The arrangements for meeting beforehand,
6. What should be taken along, and
7. Any other relevant factors (weather conditions, etc.)
21.7 VOCABULARY

ookàat (khráñ) chance
bin to fly
càkkrajaan (khan) a bicycle
chuan to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
dooj by (means of transportation)
kèə to repair, correct
khuj to converse
klèŋthaajrōup (an) camera
iāw (khùat) liquor, alcohol (bottle)
míssís Mrs.
místɛ Mr.
naaj (khon) boss
naan to be long (in time)
phrácan (thâa) Phra Can '('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River

phaa... paj to take, or escort someone
\{ maa
phoo to be enough, sufficient
rim (rim) edge, rim
rótjon (khan) car, motor car
rót sāamlōo (khan) samlor
rót tük tük a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis

rya bin (lam, khruyän) airplane
khruyän

talăat nāam the Floating Market in Thonburi
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thâa (thâa, hèŋ)</td>
<td>port, harbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thàajrûup</td>
<td>to take a picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>théseksiî (khan)</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thiidiaw</td>
<td>exactly, quite, very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thîlip</td>
<td>to ride, pedal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thammadâa</td>
<td>usually, normally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troŋ</td>
<td>to correspond to, agree with, coincide with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wan âŋkhaan</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan athít</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan can</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan phrá</td>
<td>Buddhist day of worship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan ph(a)rýhàt</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan phút</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan sâw</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wan sùk</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wâan</td>
<td>to be free, not busy, not occupied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22.0 BASIC DIALOG: An American Contacts a Thai Friend

A Voice: hänloo, thîînîî kâaw nỳţ
thoo pëst sûun há
Hello, this is 91280.

David: khoö phût kakhun sûnthon
nôoj, dâj máj há
Could I speak with Mr. Sunthorn?

Voice: roo dîaw nahá
Just a minute.

Sunthorn: sûnthon phût khrâp
Sunthorn speaking.

David: sawàtdii khrâp
phôm, deewît, phût khrâp
It's David speaking.
cam phôm dâj máj
Remember me?

Sunthorn: So, khun deewît lëa
maa thỳţ tântës myaràj há
Oh, it's David!

When did you get here?

David: myâ wansûk thîî lësw
Last Friday.

Sunthorn: khun bôk càak ameerikaā
myaràj há
When did you leave America?

David: myâ sôŋ dyan kòon há
raaw wanthîî kâaw kumphaa
Two months ago.

Around February the ninth.

Sunthorn: weelaanîî khun phâk
thîînâj há
Where are you staying?

David: thîî hooten impeřîan
troŋ sooŋ rûamrîdíi
At the Imperial Hotel,

On Ruam Rudee Lane.
Sunthorn: jënní wàan màj há
jàak ca cheen maa thaan
khàaw thìi bâan

David: jàa ròpkuan lej há

Sunthorn: màj ròpkuan rok há
phôm jàak hàj khun rúucàk
bâan phôm dùâaj

David: khòpkhun màak há
bâan khun jùu thìnâj làhá
phôm paj màj thèuuk

Sunthorn: phôm ca paj râp khun
thìi hooten
raaw sák hòk moon
khrrýn, nahá

David: tòk loŋ há
phôm ca khooj jùu nàa
hooten

Are you free this evening? I'd like to invite you to eat at my house.
Don't put yourself out.
No trouble at all.
I'd like you to know where my house is.
Thanks very much.
Where is your house?
I don't know how to get there.
I'll pick you up at the hotel.
Around 6:30, O.K.?
Right.
I'll wait for you in front of the hotel.

22.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

a) There are three ways to express the meaning of 'ago' in Thai:

\[ \text{(mùa +) Period of Time + } \begin{cases} \text{kòon} \\ \text{thìi lëw} \\ \text{maa lëw} \end{cases} \]
THAI BASIC COURSE

Example: (mûa) sâam aathít kòon
         (mûa) sâam aathít thîî lésw       'three weeks ago'
         (mûa) sâam aathít maa lésw

b) tântûe 'since, from (such and such time) may be used
   with the time expressions above:

   tântûe (mûa) sâon dyàn kòon       'since two months ago!

   It may also be used with particular points in time, as in
   tântûe (mûa) (dyàn) phûûtsacîkâa   'Since November'

   * khoosîk (ק.פ.) is an abbreviation for khûût sàkâràâat
     (A.D. or Christian Era).

   * phûûsîk (פ.פ.) is an abbreviation of phûûthá sàkâràâat
     (B.E. or Buddhist Era).

22.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The following constructions are used in asking and giving
   the date:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Q: wannîî (pen) wan thîî</th>
<th>thûwràj</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: wannîî (pen) wan thîî</td>
<td>pêst (meesãa [jon])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'What day of the month is it?
It's the eighth (of April)'
b) The verb จ่าก 'want to, would like' normally has a sentence as a complement.

When the subject of the main verb (จ่าก) and of its complement are the same, the subject of the complement does not occur.

| A: ภำม จ่าก ...  | 'I would like ...' |
| B: ภำม ภำงก หุน  | 'I meet you.'   |
| A/B: ภำม จ่าก ภำงก หุน  | 'I would like to meet you.' |

When the subject of the main verb and of the complement are different and the meaning is causative (i.e. 'to have or cause someone to do something'), both subjects occur and หำง occurs after จ่าก.

| A: ภำม จ่าก ...  | 'I would like ...' |
| B: หำง ภำงก หุน  | 'He meets you.'   |
| A/B: ภำม จ่าก หำง ภำงก หุน  | 'I would like him to meet you.' |
### THAI BASIC COURSE

#### 22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sìi</td>
<td>wanníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>wanníi wanthìi sìi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date today?</td>
<td>It's the fourth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hâa</td>
<td>phrûnníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>phrûnníi wanthìi hâa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date tomorrow?</td>
<td>It's the fifth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sãam</td>
<td>mûawaanníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>mûawaanníi wanthìi sãam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What was the date yesterday.</td>
<td>It was the third.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. hòk</td>
<td>maryynníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>maryynníi wanthìi hòk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date the day after tomorrow?</td>
<td>It's the sixth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. sìp sìi</td>
<td>wanníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>wanníi wanthìi sìp sìi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date today?</td>
<td>It's the fourteenth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sìp hâa</td>
<td>phrûnníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>phrûnníi wanthìi sìp hâa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date tomorrow.</td>
<td>It's the fifteenth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. sìp hòk</td>
<td>maryynníi wanthìi thâwraj</td>
<td>maryynníi wanthìi sìp hòk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the date the day after tomorrow?</td>
<td>It's the sixteenth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sìp</td>
<td>waansyynn(ñìi) wanthìi sñìŋ thâwraj</td>
<td>waansyynníi wanthìi sìp sñìŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What was the day before yesterday?</td>
<td>It was the twelfth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mókkaraakhom, rësk</td>
<td>dyan mókkaraa khom(^1) pen dyan rësk khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>January is the first month of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kumphaaphan, sōŋ</td>
<td>dyan kumphaaphan pen dyan thīi sōŋ khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>February is the second month of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. mlīnaakhom, sāam</td>
<td>dyan mlīnaakhom pen dyan thīi sāam khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>March is the third month of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. meesājon, sīi</td>
<td>dyan meesājon pen dyan thīi sīi khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>April is the fourth month of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phrītsaphaakhom, hāa</td>
<td>dyan phrītsaphaakhom pen dyan thīi hāa khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May is the fifth month of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. mīthunaajon, hōk</td>
<td>dyan mīthunaajon pen dyan thīi hōk khọŋ pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>June is the sixth month of the year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)Months having 31 days end in khom; those having 30 end with jon. Only February ends in phan. In spoken Thai these endings are usually omitted.
7. karákkadaakhom, cèt sỳnhǎakhom pen dyan thīipèst khɔŋ pii
   August is the eighth month of the year.

8. kanjaajon, kâaw kanjaajon pen dyan thīi kâaw khɔŋ pii
   September is the ninth month of the year.

9. tulaakhom, sìp tulaakhom pen dyan thīi sìp khɔŋ pii
   October is the tenth month of the year.

10. phrýt(sa) cīkaajon, sìp-èt phrýtsačīkaajon pen dyan thīi sìp-èt khɔŋ pii
    November is the eleventh month of the year.

11. thanwaakhom, sùt thanwaakhom pen dyan sùt thāaj khɔŋ pii
    December is the last month of the year.

c) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. dyan araj pen dyan thīisɔŋ khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) kumphaa(phan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dyan araj pen dyan rēsk khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) mókkaraa(khom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dyan araj pen dyan sùt thāaj khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) thanwa(khom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. dyan araj pen dyan thīi pèst khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) sỳnhǎa(khom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. dyan araj pen dyan thīi ĥāa khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) phrýtsaphaa(khom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. dyan araj pen dyan thīi sǎam khɔŋ pii</td>
<td>(dyan) minaa(khom)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. dyan araj pen dyan thīī sīp-ēt (dyan) phrýt(sa) khōn pīi cikaa(jon)

8. dyan araj pen dyan thīī cēt khōn pīi (dyan) karākkadaa(khom)

9. dyan araj pen dyan thīī hōk khōn pīi (dyan) mīthunaa(jon)

10. dyan araj pen dyan thīī sīp khōn pīi (dyan) tulaa(khom)

11. dyan araj pen dyan thīī sīl khōn pīi (dyan) meesāa(jon)

12. dyan araj pen dyan thīī kāaw khōn pīi (dyan) kanjaa(jon)

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (YEARS)

I. 1. khoosāo nỳŋ phan cēt rōoj cēt sīp hōk 1776
    2. khoosāo nỳŋ phan cēt rōoj pēst sīp kāaw 1789
    3. khoosāo nỳŋ phan pēst rōoj hōk sīp sōŋ 1862
    4. khoosāo nỳŋ phan pēst rōoj hōk sīp hāa 1865
    5. khoosāo nỳŋ phan kāaw rōoj sīl sīp 1940
    6. khoosāo nỳŋ phan kāaw rōoj sīl sīp pēst 1948
    7. khoosāo nỳŋ phan kāaw rōoj hāa sīp sīi 1954
    8. khoosāo nỳŋ phan kāaw rōoj hōk sīp hōk 1966

II. 1. phoosāo sōŋ phan sāam rōoj sīp 2310
    2. phoosāo sōŋ phan sāam rōoj jīī sīp hāa 2325
    3. phoosāo sōŋ phan sīi rōoj cēt sīp hāa 2475
    4. phoosāo sōŋ phan sīi rōoj kāaw sīp sīi 2494
    5. phoosāo sōŋ phan hāa rōoj 2500
    6. phoosāo sōŋ phan hāa rōoj nỳŋ 2501
    7. phoosāo sōŋ phan hāa rōoj kāaw 2509

354
**Response Drill** (Use actual dates in the responses below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. pii níi pen pii khoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii níi pen pii khoosöo nỳn phan kâaw rócj hòksłp kâaw What year (A.D.) is this? It's 1969.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pii nâa pen pii khoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii nâa pen pii khoosöo nỳn phan kâaw rócj cèt-sìp What year (A.D.) is next year? It's 1970.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pii thîlès w pen pii khoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii thîlès w pen pii khoosöo nỳn phan kâaw rócj hòksłp pèst What year (A.D.) was last year? It was 1968.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pii níi pen pii phoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii níi pen pii phoosöo sǹng phan hâa rócj sìp s̀ng What year (B.E.) is this? It's 2512. (A.D. 1969)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pii nâa pen pii phoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii nâa pen pii phoosöo sǹng phan hâa rócj sìp sàam What year (B.E.) is next year? It's 2513.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. pii thîlès w pen pii phoosöo araj</td>
<td>pii thîlès w pen pii phoosöo hâa rócj sìp-èt What year (B.E.) was last year? It was 2511.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>June 1, 1960</td>
<td>wanthīi nỳ́n mîthunajon khoos̀o nỳ́n phan kāaw rōōj hōk-sìp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 14, 1966</td>
<td>wanthīi sìp sìi kārākadaakhom khoos̀o nỳ́n phan kāaw rōōj hōk-sìp hōk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February 23, 1969</td>
<td>wanthīi jīi-sìp sāam kumphaaphan khoos̀o nỳ́n phan kāaw rōōj hōk-sìp kāaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 20, B.E. 2509</td>
<td>wanthīi jīi-sìp phrōysaphaakhom phoos̀o sŏ̌n phan hāarōōj kāaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 5, B.E. 2510</td>
<td>wanthīi hāa thanwaakhom phoos̀o sŏ̌n phan hāa rōōj sìp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

1. mỳ̀a sāam wan kòn
   mỳ̀a sāam wan thīi lēew
   mỳ̀a sāam wan maa lēew
   '3 days ago'

2. mỳ̀a sìp wan kòn
   mỳ̀a sìp wan thīi lēew
   mỳ̀a sìp wan maa lēew
   '10 days ago'

3. mỳ̀a sāam aathīt kòn
   mỳ̀a sāam aathīt thīi lēew
   mỳ̀a sāam aathīt maa lēew
   '3 weeks ago'

356
4.  m̄a hāa dyan kōn  '5 months ago'  
m̄a hāa dyan thīi lēs/w  
m̄a hāa dyan maa lēs/w

5.  m̄a hōk pīi kōn  '6 years ago'  
m̄a hōk pīi thīi lēs/w  
m̄a hōk pīi maa lēs/w

h)  Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sōn dyan</td>
<td>raw rēem rian phaasāathaj m̄yārāj</td>
<td>raw rēem rian phaasāathaj m̄a sōn dyan kōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did we start studying Thai?</td>
<td>We started studying Thai two months ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hāa pīi</td>
<td>khāw kheēj jūu myān thaj m̄yārāj</td>
<td>khāw kheēj jūu myān thaj m̄a hāa pīi kōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did he live in Thailand?</td>
<td>He lived in Thailand five years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sāam dyan</td>
<td>khāw klāp paj myān thaj m̄yārāj</td>
<td>khāw klāp paj myān thaj m̄a sāam dyan kōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did he return to Thailand?</td>
<td>He returned to Thailand three months ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sāam sūi</td>
<td>khun pōp khāw m̄yārāj wan</td>
<td>phōm pōp khāw m̄a sāam sūi wan kōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did you meet him?</td>
<td>I met him three or four days ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: Repeat the drill using ...thīi lēs/w and once more using ...maa lēs/w in place of kōn

357
1) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. hônsamût</td>
<td>minha sôn chûamoon kôon</td>
<td>minha sôn chûamoon kôon, phôm jùu naj hônsamût</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khun jùu thîinâj</td>
<td>Two hours ago I was at the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where were you two hours ago?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. duu nánsûy</td>
<td>minha jîi-sîp naathii maa</td>
<td>minha jîi-sîp naathii maa léèw, phôm duu nánsûy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>léèw, khun tham araj</td>
<td>Ten minutes ago I was studying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What were you doing ten minutes ago?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sônkhlaâa</td>
<td>minha sâm aathít thîi</td>
<td>minha sâm aathít thîi léèw phôm paj sônkhlaâa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>léèw khun paj nâj</td>
<td>Three weeks ago I went to Songkla.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where did you go three weeks ago?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. tham</td>
<td>minha cêt pii kôon, khâw</td>
<td>minha cêt pii kôon, khâw tham râatchakaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>râatchakaan araj khrâp</td>
<td>Seven years ago what was he doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seven years ago he was in government service.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. rian nánsûy</td>
<td>minha hôk pii kôon, khun</td>
<td>minha hôk pii kôon, phôm rian nánsûy thîi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thîi kruûthêep</td>
<td>kruûthêep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where were you studying (going to school) six years ago.</td>
<td>I was going to school in Bangkok six years ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. จุ๋ นิ้ว มาย คนจูนิ้ว เลือว, มาย ปีส พิถี พิถี เลือว, บุ๊หสัตăn คุณ จุ๋ นิ้ว น้ํา ภอนจุ๋ นิ้ว มาย คนจูนิ้ว เลือว, บุ๊หสัตăn

Where were you living eight years ago?  Eight years ago I was living in Boston.

**J) Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. มาย ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้า</td>
<td>คุณมาเทนนิสนิสี มาย ปีส้บุ๊หสัตăn</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้า</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. มาย ดายนีนพพุทธสัตikan</td>
<td>คุณมาเทนนิสนิสี มาย ปีส้บุ๊หสัตăn</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) ดายนีนพพุทธสัตikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. มาย สอง ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้าน</td>
<td>คุณมาเทนนิสนิสี มาย ปีส้บุ๊หสัตăn</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) สอง ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้าน</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. มาย สอง ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้าน</td>
<td>คุณมาเทนนิสนิสี มาย ปีส้บุ๊หสัตăn</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) สอง ดายนีนพพุทธสัติก้าน</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. มาย สามพิชิมายแส Alan</td>
<td>คุณมาจุ๋ มายแส Alan มาย เลือว</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) สามพิชิมายแส Alan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. มาย สามพิชิมายแส Alan</td>
<td>คุณมาจุ๋ มายแส Alan มาย เลือว</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) สามพิชิมายแส Alan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. มาย พิชิมายแส Alan</td>
<td>คุณมาจุ๋ มายแส Alan</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) พิชิมายแส Alan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. มาย พิชิมายแส Alan</td>
<td>คุณมาจุ๋ มายแส Alan</td>
<td>ทันต่น ส (มาย) พิชิมายแส Alan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since November.

Since two months ago.

Since three years ago.

Since B.E. 2500.
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. (vis) dylan thanwaa  khun maa juu thiinii  tantees vis dylan thanwaa
    pii thiileew  tantees myaraj  pii thiileew
    How long have you been living here?
    Since last December.

6. (vis) sjon  khaw paj tantees  tantees vis sjon
    chummoon kon  myaraj  chummoon kon
    How long has he been gone?
    Since two hours ago.

7. (vis) sjon aathit  khaw paj tantees  tantees vis sjon
    thiil leew  myaraj  aathit thiil leew
    How long has he been gone?
    Since two weeks ago.

k) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jaak ca cheen maa thaan khaw thii ban</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.  thiinii  jaak ca cheen maa thaan khaw thiinii
      I’d like to invite you to eat here.

2.  thiaw  jaak ca cheen maa thiaw thiinii
      I’d like to invite you to go out here.

3.  sjon  jaak ca cheen maa sjon thiinii
      I’d like to invite you to come teach here.

4.  waja nam  jaak ca cheen maa waja nam thiinii
      I’d like to invite you to go swimming here.

5.  phop khaw  jaak ca cheen maa phop khaw thiinii
      I’d like to invite you to meet him here.
1) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>̀jàák ca cheen paj than khāaw thîi bāan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. thîi ráan</td>
<td>̀jàák ca cheen paj than khāaw thîi ráan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thîi nān</td>
<td>̀jàák ca cheen paj than khāaw thîi nān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sōon</td>
<td>̀jàák ca cheen paj sōon thîinān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. phûp khāw</td>
<td>̀jàák ca cheen paj phûp khāw thîinān</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

m) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phôm ̀jàák phûp khun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. khāw ̀jàak</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak phûp khun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. rúucàk khun</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak rúucàk khun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. paj myanthaj</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak paj myanthaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pen m̀o</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak pen m̀o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. sỳy rót</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak sỳy rót</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khàp rót pen</td>
<td>khāw ̀jàak khàp rót pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. phôm</td>
<td>phôm ̀jàak khàp rót pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. phûut phaasāa thaj dāj</td>
<td>phôm ̀jàak phûut phaasāa thaj dāj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

361
n) Sentence Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1.  phôm jàak...
    khun rúucàk bâan phôm

2.  phôm jàak...
    khun phûut phaaasàathaj kan

3.  khun phôc phôm jàak...
    phôm pen mûc

4.  phôm jàak...
    khun àan nán$$y$$ y lêm nî

5.  phômès thûk khon jàak...
    lûuklûuk rian roongrian diidii

Pattern 3

phôm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan phôm

I'd like for you to know where my house is.

phôm jàak hâj khun phûut phaaasàa thaj kan

I'd like to have you speak Thai together.

khun phôc phôm jàak hâj phôm pen mûc

My father would have liked for me to become a doctor.

phôm jàak hâj khun àan nán$$y$$ y lêm nî

I'd like to have you read this book.

phômès thûk khon jàak

hâj lûuklûuk rian roongrian dii dii

All parents would like to have their children go to good schools.
o) **Sentence Combination Drill**

**Pattern 1 and 2**

1. phôm jàak...
   phôm rúucàk kháw
2. phôm mâj jàak
   kháw maa hāa phôm thîinnî

**Pattern 3**

1. phôm jàak rúucàk kháw
   I'd like to meet him.
2. phôm mâj jàak hâj kháw
   maa hāa phôm thîinnî
   I wouldn't like to have him come to see me here.
3. phôm jàak...
   phôm jàak hâj phanrajaa
   phànrrāja phôm khâp rôt pen
   I'd like to have my wife able to drive a car.
4. phôm mâj jàak...
   phôm jùu kruñţhéep
   I wouldn't like to live in Bangkok.
5. khun phôc khun mès phôm jàak...
   khun phôc khun mès phôm jàak
   phôm tham râatchakaan
   hâj phôm tham râatchakaan
   My parents would like me to be a government employee.
## THAI BASIC COURSE

### p) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. มีโอ</td>
<td>khun phūo khun jàak hâj khun pen khruu máj</td>
<td>màj jàak khráp, khun phūo phūm jàak hâj phūm pen mǐo No, he wouldn't. My father would like for me to be a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tàāncanwàt</td>
<td>khun jàak jùu krùnthèep máj</td>
<td>màj jàak khráp, phūm jàak jùu tàāncanwàt No, I wouldn't. I'd like to live in the provinces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. eesia</td>
<td>khun jàak paj āafarīkāa máj</td>
<td>màj jàak khráp, phūm jàak paj eesia No, I wouldn't. I'd like to go to Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. aahān thaj</td>
<td>khun jàak thaan aahān farānj máj</td>
<td>màj jàak khráp, phūm jàak thaan aahān thaj No, I wouldn't. I'd like to eat Thai food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. thōom</td>
<td>khun jàak hâj khâw rīak khun wâa mísate braawn máj</td>
<td>màn jàak khráp, phūm jàak hâj khâw rīak phūm wâa thōom No, I wouldn't. I'd like to have him call me Tom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

364
6. จุุว กับาน ขุน งาย ผันราจฉา แม่ งาย ขุนรา พอ
   ขุน ทาม่วน นักกับาน แม่ งาย ขุนรา จุุว กับาน
   Would you like to have your wife work (outside)?
   No, I wouldn't. I would like to have her stay at home.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Suppose today is Thursday. Focus your attention on 'วันนี้ (today)' and notice what the days in the past weeks and the future weeks are called. Repeat the words in the left column after the instructor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aathít</th>
<th>Monday of last week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thîlisw</td>
<td>Tuesday of last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thîlsséw</td>
<td>Wednesday of last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last week</td>
<td>Thursday of last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sîk</td>
<td>Friday of last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sâw</td>
<td>Saturday of last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aathít</td>
<td>Sunday of last week</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| aathíttní | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| can | mâya wan can nî | Last Monday |
| ânkhânn | mâya wan ânkhânn nî | Last Tuesday |
| phút | mâya waanní | Yesterday |
| phrîhâtt | wanní | Today |

| This week | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| sîk | phrûn nî | Tomorrow |
| sâw | maryynní | This coming Sunday |
| | {nî | This Saturday |
| | {thîl ca thîn nî | |
| aathít | wan aathít {nî | This Sunday |
| | {thîl ca thîn nî | |
can wan can (nâa thîf ca thỳn nîí)
ankhaan wan ankhaan nâa
phút wan phût nâa
phrỳhât wan phrỳhât nâa
sûk wan sûk nâa
sâw wan sâw nâa
aathît wan aathît nâa

Next Monday
This coming Monday
Next Tuesday
Next Wednesday
Next Thursday
Friday of Next week
Saturday of next week
Sunday of next week

22.4 EXERCISES

a) Assume that you have just arrived in Thailand. Call up your friend, Mr. Prasert. He invites you to dinner at his house so that you can meet his wife.

(Use the approximate date of your arrival in Thailand as a basis for responses.)

b) The instructor points at various dates on the calendar asks the students what the date is. (This should be continued until all students can give any date in the year readily).

c) Student A asks Student B his birthdate. Student B responds with the correct information.

d) Student A asks Student B how long he has been doing various things (below are some examples). Student A responds with the correct information.

1. living in the Washington area (or some other area)
2. studying Thai
3. married
4. sitting here, etc.
e) The students question each other about things they have wanted to do in the past and whether or not other people wanted them to do these things. Below is a sample exchange:

A: ม่าย สิ่งปี ม้า ลี้สิ่งพ่อ จ้าย แป้น มี น้อย
B: คุณป้าย จ้าย หำจ คุณ พ่อ ผู้รุ่น
A: ม่าย จ้าย กระป๋าด. ค้ำว จ้าย หำจ พ่อ มิน แป้น ค่ำรู้

A: Ten years ago I wanted to be a doctor.
B: Did your father want you to be a doctor?
A: No, he didn’t. He wanted me to be a teacher.

22.5 VOCABULARY

áfıarikaa (thawfīp)  Africa (continent)
aathít  week
imphiirítan  Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
cam... dâj  to remember
chüammon  hour (60 minutes)
deewit  David
dyan  month
hanlōo  Hello
jàak  to want to, would like to
-ión  ending of the months that have 30 days
kanjaa (jon)  September
karákkadaa(khom)  July
-khom  ending of months that have 31 days
khriśásàkáàrâat  Christian Era
(khoò sâo)
kumphaa(phan)  February
lәej  at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently
maa lésw  ago
maryynníi the day after tomorrow
meesăa(jon) April
miinaa(khom) March
míthunaa(jon) June
mókkaraa(khom) January
phák to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
-phán ending for month of February
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon) November
phrýtspaahaa(khom) May
phúttha sàkàràat Buddhist Era
(phoosño)
ràem to start
rópkuan to bother, trouble (someone)
ro, ròk, rök, ròok, particle often used with statement
rook, re-
of negation
rùam rýdii Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit
Road
sírháa(khom) August
sûnthon Sunthorn (male first name)
sûttháaj last
thīi lésw ago
tântès from (such and such a time or starting
point), since
thanwaaw(khom) December
thīi lésw last
thùuk to be right, correct
tökloŋ right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tulaa(khom) October
waansyyn(níi) the day before yesterday
wanthtíi date
23.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation About Length of Residence

A:  khun jùu myaŋ thaj maa dâj
    kli pii lêaw

B:  sǒoŋ pii kwâa lêaw khrâp

A:  lêaw phyân khun la khrâp
    maa jùu naan lêaw râe

B:  khâw phêŋ maa khrâp

A:  khâw ca jùu kli pii khrâp

B:  jâaŋ nóoj sǒoŋ pii, jâaŋ mâak
    sli pii

A:  thammaj khâw thýŋ phûut
    phaasâa thaj dâj chát jaŋjan
    lakhrâp

B:  phró khâw kheeŋ rian maa
    kōon khrâp

A:  thînâj khrâp

B:  thîi ameerikaa

A:  khâw rian jùu naan thâwrâj khrâp

B:  slp dyan khrâp

A:  How long have you been living in Thailand?
B:  More than two years.

A:  And your friend? Has he been here long?
B:  He just came.

A:  How many years will he be (here)?
B:  At least two years. At most four years.

A:  How is it that he speaks Thai so clearly?
B:  He studied it previously.

A:  Where?
B:  In America.

A:  How long did he study?
B:  Ten months.
23.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) After constructions giving numerical amounts kwàa is translated as 'more than'. For example,

\[ \text{sơn pìt kwàa} \quad \text{'More than 2 years'} \]
\[ \text{sìp lìt kwàa} \quad \text{'More than 10 liters'} \]

When used with bàat 'baht' (Thai currency), the position of kwàa is important, thus

\[ \text{sìp bàat kwàa} \quad \text{means 'more than ten baht but less than eleven'}, \]
\[ \text{but sìp kwàa bàat} \quad \text{means 'more than ten but less than twenty'}. \]

b) phân 'just' occurs just before the main verb in the sentence and refers to the recent past.

\[ \text{kháw phân maa} \quad \text{'He just came'} \]

c) phûut thoorasàp means 'to talk on the telephone.'

23.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The verbs jùu, and maa may be used in conjunction with dâj and lèsuw to indicate whether (1) an activity is complete or incomplete, and (2) whether it lasted for a long or short period of time. When verbs are used in this manner, they may be called Aspect Particles.

1. When jùu is used as an aspect particle, it indicates that the activity referred to continued for a particular period of time. jùu does not itself indicate the time of an action but may be used in combination with time expressions as in the following example:

\[ \text{kháw ca rian nángšy jùu sơn pìi} \quad \text{'He'll be studying for 2 years (no more or less)'}. \]
2. When *maa*... *lêsw* occur together as aspect markers there is indication that the action originated in the past and is continuing into the present.

*kháw thamñaan maa 2 pii lêsw*

'He has been working for 2 years (and still is)'.

3. *dâj* + Time Expression refers only to the passage of a specific period of time; when it is followed by *lêsw*, there is indication that the period of time referred to continues into the present; when used without time or aspect particles, it is interpreted as 'indefinite past time'.

*kháw thamñaan dâj 2 pii*

'He worked for 2 years.'

*kháw thamñaan dâj 2 pii lêsw*

'He's been working for 2 years (and still is working}'.

In the chart below the use and meaning of *jùu*, *dâj*, *maa*, and *lêsw* are illustrated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAIN SENTENCE</th>
<th>Aspect Particles and Time Expressions</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>jùu</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>jùu dâj</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>jùu</em></td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw kamlan thamñaan</td>
<td><em>jùu</em></td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>{jùu \ maa}</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>{jùu \ maa dâj</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>maa dâj</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw thamñaan</td>
<td><em>maa</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw ca thamñaan</td>
<td><em>...</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw ca thamñaan</td>
<td><em>jùu</em></td>
<td>2 pii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. He worked (for) two years.
2. He is working.
3. He has been working...
4. He has been working... (focus on starting point)
5. He will be working two years.

Special note: If either maa or jùu occurs in the main sentence, it can not occur as a particle,
thus khâw maa jùu myàŋ thaj dâj 2 pìi lèsìw
(Two years have passed since he came to live in Thailand).
'He's been living in Thailand for 2 years.'

Neither maa dâj 2 pìi lèsìw nor jùu dâj 2 pìi lèsìw can occur after khâw maa jùu myàŋ thaj.

b) thammaj 'why' may occur at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. Its position is determined by the expected answer, thus

1. thammaj is at the end of the sentence if the response is a Verb Phrase indicating purpose, thus
   Q: paj thammaj 'Why are you going?'
      (What is the purpose?)
   A: paj sà nú khàːŋ 'To shop.'

2. thammaj is at the beginning of the sentence if the response expected normally begins with phró 'because', and provides an explanation as to why certain actions took place or why certain situations exist; thus
   Q: thammaj paj sà nú thînâːn 'Why did you buy there?'
      thammaj màj sà nú thînîfì 'Why not shop here?'
   A: phró thînâːn (khàːŋ) thùuk kwàː 'Because things are cheaper there.'

372
3. **thammaj always** occurs at the beginning of **negative** questions.

4. **thýn** may occur with **thammaj**. It serves as an intensifier of the question. Observe the following example:

   **thammaj** khun mâj jáak jùu woobîntân
   'Why don't you like living in Washington?'

   **thammaj** khun thýn mâj jáak jùu woobîntân
   'How is that you don't like living in Washington?'

### 22.3 Grammar Drills

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. khun jùu myañ thaj maa (dâj)  
{kli pîi leśw}  
{naan thâwràj}  
How long have you been living in Thailand? | phôm jùu myañ thaj maa (dâj)  
sông pîi leśw  
Two years. |
| 2. khun thamnàan thînîi maa (dâj)  
{kli pîi leśw}  
{naan thâwràj}  
How long have you been working here? | phôm thamnàan thînîi maa (dâj) lâaj pîi leśw  
Several years. |
| 3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) kî dyan leśw  
How many months have you been studying Thai? | phôm rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) hàa dyan leśw  
Five months. |
4. khun pen khruu maa (dâj) kîl piì lêsw
   How many years have you been a teacher?
   phôm pen khruu maa (dâj) (nỳŋ) piì kwàa lêsw
   More than a year.

5. khun rúucàk khâw maa (dâj) naan thâwràj lêsw
   How long have you been knowing him?
   phôm rúucàk khâw maa (dâj) sàam piì lêsw
   Three years.

6. khun tèññaan maa (dâj) kîl piì lêsw
   How many years have you been married?
   phôm tèññaan maa (dâj) kỳap piì lêsw
   Almost a year.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun maa jùù thîînîî dâj naan thâwràj lêsw khrâp</td>
<td>phôm maa jùù thîînîî dâj hòk dyan lêsw khrâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long ago was it that you came to live here?</td>
<td>Six months (ago).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. khun maa thamñaan thîînîî dâj naan thâwràj lêsw khrâp</td>
<td>phôm maa thamñaan thîînîî dâj nỳŋ piì lêsw khrâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long ago was it that you came to work here?</td>
<td>One year (ago).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. khun maa rian náŋšỳy thîînîî dâj kìl dyan lêsw</td>
<td>phôm maa rian náŋšỳy thîînîî dâj sòŋ dyan lêsw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many months ago was it that you came to study here?</td>
<td>Two months (ago).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun maa pen khruu thînîî phôm maa pen khruu thînîî
dâj kî lî pî lès w dâj kîap nỳ pî lès w khráp
How many years ago was it that you came to be a
teacher here? Almost a year (ago).

c) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. lāaj pîi</td>
<td>khun tham râatchakaan maa phôm tham râatchakaan maa dâj lāaj pîi lès w dâj lāaj pîi lès w</td>
<td>Several years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maa dâj naan thâwràj lès w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How long have you been a government employee?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sâm dyan</td>
<td>khun maa rian phaasâa thaj thîî ef-és-aj dâj kî dyan lès w phôm maa rian phaasâa thaj thîî ef-és-aj dâj sâm dyan lès w</td>
<td>Three months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thîî ef-és-aj dâj sâm dyan lès w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many months have you been studying Thai at FSI?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. aathît kwâa</td>
<td>khun rian phaasâa thâj phôm rian phaasâa thaj maa dâj kî aathît lès w maa dâj aathît kwâa lès w</td>
<td>More than a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maa dâj kî aathît lès w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many weeks have you been studying Thai?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sôn pîi</td>
<td>khun rûucâk khâw maa dâj sôn pîi kwâa lès w phôm rûucâk khâw maa dâj naan thâwràj lès w sôn pîi kwâa lès w</td>
<td>More than two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How long have you been knowing him?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

375
5.  hâa dyan  khun klàp maa ameerikaa  phôm klàp maa ameerikaa
dâj dî dyan lês  dâj hâa dyan lês
   How many months has it been since you came back to America?  Five months.

6.  sàam  khun nàŋ khoŋ khàw maa  phôm nàŋ khoŋ khàw maa
chûamoong  dâj kli chûamoong lês  dâj sàam chûamoong lês
   How many hours have you been sitting waiting for him?  Three hours.

7.  khrîŋ  raw khuj kan maa dâj kî
chûamoong  naathii lês
   How many minutes have you been conversing?  A half hour.

   d)  Transformation Drill

   Pattern 1  Pattern 2

1.  khun rúucàk khàw maa naan lês  khun rúucàk khàw maa naan lês  râkhráp
       You've been knowing him for a long time.  Have you been knowing him for long?

2.  khun thamŋaañ thîññî maa naan lês  khun thamŋaañ thîññî maa naan lês  râkhráp
       You've been working here for a long time.  Have you been working here long?
3. khun rian phaasāa thaj maa naan léśw
   You've been studying Thai for a long time.
   khun rian phaasāa thaj maa naan léśw rěkhhráp
   Have you been studying Thai for long?

4. khun jùu thīinī maa naan léśw
   You've been living here for a long time.
   khun jùu thīinī maa naan léśw rěkhhráp
   Have you been living here long?

5. khun sâap ryânníi maa naan léśw
   You've been knowing about this matter for a long time.
   khun sâap ryânníi maa naan léśw rěkhhráp
   Have you been knowing about this matter for long?

6. khun jàak hën kháw maa naan léśw
   You've been wanting to see him for a long time.
   khun jàak hën kháw maa naan léśw rěkhhráp
   Have you been wanting to see him for long?

7. khun ch̀ıp kháw maa naan léśw
   You've liked her for a long time.
   khun ch̀ıp kháw maa naan léśw rěkhhráp
   Have you liked her long?
e) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khun maa jùu myaŋthaj dāj naan lēsw rēkhráp</td>
<td>phēŋ maa khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you been living in Thailand long?</td>
<td>I just came.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun maa khoɔj phōm dāj naan lēsw rēkhráp</td>
<td>phēŋ maa khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you been waiting for me long?</td>
<td>I just came.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun maa rian phaasãa thaj dāj naan lēsw rēkhráp</td>
<td>phēŋ maa khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you been studying Thai for long?</td>
<td>I just started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun rūucàk khāw maa naan lēsw rēkhráp</td>
<td>phēŋ rūucàk khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you been knowing him for long?</td>
<td>I just met him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun rian nāŋsỳy lêmnīi maa naan lēsw rēkhráp</td>
<td>phēŋ rian khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you been reading this book long?</td>
<td>I just began.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f) **Expansion Drill**

thammaj
thammaj lakhráp
thammaj thỳŋ chát lakhráp
thammaj thỳŋ chát jaŋŋān lakhráp
thammaj thỳŋ phūut dāj chát jaŋŋān lakhráp
thammaj thỳŋ phūut phaasãa thaj dāj chát jaŋŋān lakhráp
thammaj khāw thỳŋ phūut phaasãa thaj dāj chát jaŋŋān lakhráp
g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khāw phēŋ maa myañ thaj. thammaj khāw thỳŋ phūt phaasāa thaj dâj chát jaŋñán lakhráp
   He just came to Thailand. How is that he can speak Thai so clearly?

2. khāw māj chōop aakāat rōon. thammaj khāw thỳŋ jàak paj jùu myañ thaj lakhráp
   He doesn't like hot weather. How is that he wants to go to Thailand?

3. khāw māj kheəj maa rian thīi ameerikaa. thammaj khāw thỳŋ phūt phaasāa ankrät dâj dīi lakhráp
   He has never studied in America. How is that he speaks English (so) well?

4. khāw bōok wâa khāw māj mīi nēen. thammaj khāw thỳŋ sỳy rōt lakhráp
   He said he didn't have any money. How is it that he speaks buying a car?

h) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thammaj (khun) (thỳŋ) māj paŋ thampraan</td>
<td>Why is it that you aren't going to work?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. phūut thammaj khun thỳŋ māj phūut
   Why is it that you don't talk?

2. chōop khāw thammaj khun thỳŋ māj chōop khāw
   Why is that you don't like him?
THAI BASIC COURSE

3. māj jàak jùu thammaj khun thýn māj jàak jùu wōochiňtân
   wōochiňtân    Why is it that you don't like to live
                  in Washington?

4. māj maa rian thammaj khun thýn māj maa rian náŋsyý
   náŋsyý        How is it that you aren't studying?

5. māj khâwcaj thammaj khun thýn māj khâwcaj
   How does it happen that you don't understand?

6. māj khàp rót thammaj khun thýn māj khàp rót maa roonrían
   maa roonrían  Why is it that you don't drive to school?

   1) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. rian maa kõon</td>
<td>thammaj kháw thýn phûut thaj dâj chát</td>
<td>(phró) kháw kheeaj rian maa kõon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>How does it come about that he speaks Thai so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>well?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because he studied previously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. māj chôop</td>
<td>thammaj khun thýn māj aakàat nãaw</td>
<td>(phró) phôm māj chôop aakàat nãaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>How is that you don't want to go to Norway?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because I don't like cold weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. māj sabaaj</td>
<td>thammaj mûawaanníi kháw thýn māj maa thamnaan</td>
<td>(phró) kháw māj sabaaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Why was it that he didn't come to work yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because he was ill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.  khàp rót màj pen  thammaj phanrajaa khun thýn màj khàp rót  (phró) kháw khàp rót màj pen
   Why isn't your wife driving?  Because she doesn't know how.

5.  thaan ráatchakaan jàak hàj phŏm rúu phaasaa thaj  (phró) thaan ráatchakaan jàak hàj phŏm
   thammaj khun thýn tén maa rian phaasaa thaj rúu phaasaa thaj
   Why did you have to come to study Thai?  Because the Government wanted me to know Thai.

6.  màj wàan aw rót paj kès  (phró) phôm màj wàan
   thammaj khun thýn màj  Why didn't you take your car to get it repaired?
   Why didn't you take your car to get it repaired?  Because I wasn't free.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw rian phaasăa thaj jùu kli pii</td>
<td>kháw rian jùu nỳn pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many years did he study Thai?</td>
<td>He studied one year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun pen thah̄an jùu kli pii</td>
<td>phôm pen thah̄an jùu sŏn pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many years were you a soldier?</td>
<td>I was a soldier for two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun fañ théep jùu kli chûamoọ́n</td>
<td>phôm fañ théep jùu khrýn chûamoọ́n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many hours did you listen to the tape?</td>
<td>I listened to the tape for half an hour.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun phūt thoorasāp jùu naan thāwraj
   How long did he talk on the telephone?
   khāw phūt thoorasāp jùu jīislp hâa naathii
   He talked 25 minutes on the phone.

5. khāw thamṇaan jùu thīi wiancān kli piī
   How many years did he work in Vientiane?
   khāw thamṇaan jùu thīiinān sōn piī khrīṇ
   He worked there two and a half years.

23.4 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES (Listen to the passages and answer the questions.)

a) mīa piī 1941 - thỳŋ 1943 khun thōom pen thahāan jùu
   thīi ookinaawaa . khāw pen jùu sōn piī, dīawnīi
   khun thōom pen khāarāatchakaan krasuŋ tāaŋ prathēt

   Question                           Response

1. khun thōom kheej pen thahāan máj
   kheej

2. thīi nàj                          thīi ookinaawaa

3. pen jùu kli piī                  sōn piī

4. tāntēs piī khoosāo araj
   thỳŋ khoosāo araj
   1941 - 1943

5. dīawnīi khāw thamṇaan araj
   khāw pen khāarāatchakaan krasuŋ tāaŋprathēt.
b)  myâcháawníi khun prichaa paj talàat . khâw phôp phŷan
    thîi talàat . khâw khuj kàp phŷan jùu sôon chûamoôn

    **Question**  
    1. myâcháawníi khun
       prichaa phôp khraj
    2. thîinâj
    3. khâw khuj kàp phŷan
       jùu naan thâwrâj

    **Response**  
    khâw phôp phŷan
    thîi talàat
    khâw khuj kàp phŷan
    jùu sôon chûamoôn


    c)  mîste samít thamñaan thîi krasuantàan prathêet maa
dâj lâaj pií lêsw . khâw kheej paj jùu lâaj prathêet .
khâw kheej paj pen konsûn thîi chiarmâj jùu sàam
    pií . weelaanîi , khâw jùu thîi wochi nthân

    **Question**  
    1. mîste samít thamñaan thîi
       krasuan tàanprathêet
       maa dâj kli pií lêsw
    2. khâw kheej paj jùu tàan
       prathêet màj
    3. khâw kheej paj jùu
       myanthaaj màj
    4. khâw pen konsûn jùu thîi
       chiarmâj kli pií

    **Response**  
    lâaj pií lêsw
    kheej
    khâw kheej paj jùu lâaj
    prathêet
    kheej , khâw kheej paj
    pen konsûn thîi chiarmâj
    khâw pen jùu sàam pií

383
23.5 EXERCISES

a) Different students will find out how long other students have been doing different kinds of activities. The following are some examples: (1) living here, (2) learning Thai, (3) married, (4) playing some sport, (5) knowing how to do something, such as driving a car, etc.

b) One student will give a short biography of himself. Other students will question him about certain parts of it, in particular how long some parts of it lasted (e.g.s. how long he was in the armed forces, etc.).

c) One student says he went some particular place. A second student asks him why he went there. When the first student gives a reason, the second one asks him why he didn't go some other place. The first student gives his reasons.

23.6 VOCABULARY

ookinaawaa Okinawa
chát plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
jàñ màak at most
jàñ nóoj at least
lít liter
maa kòon previously
noorawee Norway
phên just
thýñ that, so, then, if it comes to the point that
LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

24.0 BASIC EPISODE: Part I

khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasāthaj jùu thīi roongrian sōn phaasā khōn krasuan tāanprathēt. khāw rian maa dāj sōn dyan lēew. khāw ca rian lik sīi dyan, lēew ca paj myaṇṭhaj. khāw ca paj jùu myaṇṭhaj jāaṇnōo jraaw sōn pii, jāaṇmāak sīi pii. khāw ca phaa phanrajaa lē lūuklūuk khōn khāw paj dūaj. khāw kā wāa khāw ca òok cāak woonchǐtān wanthīi sīp karākadaakhom, ca khāp rōt paj bāan phōmže khāw thīi rāt pensilweenia. khāw ca phāk jùu thīinān hāa wan, lēew khāw ca khāp rōt paj njujōok. khāw ca loŋ rya thīi njujōok lē paj khỳn thīi farānsēet. cāak farānsēet, khāw ca bin paj room, eethēn, teeharaan, niw delhī lē kruṇṭhēep. khāw ca māj wē thīaw teeharaan lē niw delhī tē khāw ca wē thīaw room sīi wan lē eethēn hāa wan. khāw kā wāa khāw ca thỳn kruṇṭhēep raawraaw wanthīi nỳŋ sīnjāa.

24.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasāthaj jùu thīināj
2. khāw rian maa dāj naan thāwrāj lēew
3. khāw ca rian paj lik kīi dyan
4. lēew khāw ca paj nāj
5. khāw ca paj jùu myaṇṭhaj kīi pii
6. khāw ca phaa khraaj paj dūaj

385
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. kháw kà ca bòk càak woorhíntân mýaràj
8. kháw ca paj náj kóon . paj jaññaj
9. thammaj kháw tson paj thíi niw jóok
10. kháw ca paj khýn rya thínáj
11. càak farànsèet , kháw ca paj myaŋ thaj dooj araj
12. kháw ca wé thíaw thínáj báaŋ
13. kháw kà ca thýn myaŋ thaj mýaràj

24.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sëon dyann, myaŋ thaj</td>
<td>kháw ca rian lik sëon dyann, lësw ca paj myaŋ thaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll study for two more months, then go to Thailand.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sip wan, myan juan</td>
<td>kháw ca rian lik sip wan, lësw ca paj myaŋ juan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll study for ten more days, then go to Viet Nam.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hök aathít chíanmàj</td>
<td>kháw ca rian lik hök aathít, lësw ca paj chíanmàj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll study for six more weeks, then go to Chiangmai.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nỳŋ pii, phamàa</td>
<td>kháw ca rian lik nỳŋ pii, lësw ca paj phamàa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll study for one more year, then go to Burma.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.  sɔŋ ɔŋ ᵅa saŋ ɗa a õik sɔŋ ɔŋ ᵅa saŋ ɗa a, lɛηsw ca pao laaw
   He'll study for two more weeks, then
   go to Laos.

6.  nɔŋ pii, sawit  khɔw ca rian õik nɔŋ pii, lɛηsw ca pao sawit
   He'll study for one more year, then
   go to Switzerland.

b)  Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ādhit</td>
<td>khɔn ca rian õik kli ādhit</td>
<td>õik sɔam ādhit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many more weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will you study?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 4 pii</td>
<td>khɔn ca thamɔan õik kli pii</td>
<td>õik sli pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many more years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will you work?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 10 pii</td>
<td>khɔn ca pen khaarɔatchakaan</td>
<td>õik sli pii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>õik kli pii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many more years will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you be a civil servant?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 15 naathii</td>
<td>khɔn ca jyyn khoɔ khaaw õik</td>
<td>õik sli phax naathii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kli naathii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many more minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will you wait for him?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 3 wan</td>
<td>khɔn ca thɔaw õik kli wan</td>
<td>õik sɔam wan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many more days will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you be on vacation?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. 2 pii  khun ca pracam thīi myañ thaj  līk sōng pii
   līk kīi pii
   How many more years
   will you be stationed
   in Thailand? Two more years.

c) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nīn piì, 2 piì</td>
<td>jān nóo jīn piì, jān māak sōng piì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 naathīi,</td>
<td>jān nóo jīsīp naathīi, jān māak sāamālp naathīi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 naathīi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōng dyan, sīi dyan</td>
<td>jān nóo jī sōng dyan, jān māak sīi dyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nīn wan, cēt wan</td>
<td>jān nóo jīn wan, jān māak cēt wan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōng aathīt, sāam aathīt</td>
<td>jān nóo jī sōng aathīt, jān māak sāam aathīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 chūamoon,</td>
<td>jān nóo jī sōng chūamoon, jān māak sāam chūamoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 chūamoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wan thīi slī</td>
<td>khāw ca ḍōk cāak</td>
<td>khāw kā (wāa khāw) ca ḍōk cāak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karākadaa</td>
<td>wuochiētān wanthīi</td>
<td>cāak wuochiētān wanthīi slī karākadaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thāwrāj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On what date will he leave Washington?</td>
<td>He estimates he will leave on July 10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. raaw dyan nâa  phyân khun ca maa  khâw kà (wâa khâw) ca
   thỳn mỳaràj  maa thỳn raaw dyan nâa
   When will your  He estimates he will
   friend come?  arrive next month.

3. wanncan nâa  khun ca paj aw rót  phôm kàa (wâa phôm) ca
   mỳaràj  paj aw wanncan nâa
   When will you go  I plan to go get the
   get the car? car next Monday.

4. raaw lik sàam khun ca bòok khâw  phôm kàa (wâa phôm) ca
   sli wan  bòok khâw raaw lik sàam
   mỳaràj  sli wan
   When will you  I plan to tell him in
   tell him? three or four days.

e) **Combination Drill**  (Combine sentences 1 and 2 into 3.)

**Sentences 1 and 2**  

1. khâw ca kháp rót  khâw ca kháp rót paj njujóok
   khâw ca paj njujóok  He'll drive to New York.

2. khâw ca deen...  khâw ca deen paj roongrian
   khâw ca paj roongrian  He'll walk to school.

3. khâw ca lon yra  khâw ca lon yra paj loondoon
   khâw ca paj loondoon  He'll take a boat to London.

4. khâw ca khỳn rótme  khâw ca khỳn rótme paj ajúthajaa
   khâw ca paj ajúthajaa  He'll go to Ayuthaya by bus.

389
5. kháw ca nãŋ ryabin
   kháw ca paj myãŋ thaj
   kháw ca nãŋ ryabin paj myãŋ thaj
   He'll take a plane to Thailand.

6. kháw ca khyn rótfaj
   kháw ca paj chiãnmãj
   kháw ca khyn rótfaj paj chiãnmãj
   He'll take a train to Chiangmai.

f) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. rooŋrëem eerawan, hâa wan | kháw ca phá̄k jùu thīi rooŋrëem eerawan hâa wan
   He'll stay at the Erawan Hotel for five days.
| 2. bâan phýan, sõŋ aathít | kháw ca phá̄k jùu thīi bâan phýan sõŋ aathít
   He'll stay at his friend's house for two weeks.
| 3. chaaj thalee, nỳŋ dyan | kháw ca phá̄k jùu thīi chaaj thalee nỳŋ dyan
   He'll stay at the beach for a month.
| 4. parīt, 4 chûamoon | kháw ca phá̄k jùu thīi parīt sī chûamoon
   He'll stay in Paris for four hours.
| 5. bâan phôm, nỳŋ pii | kháw ca phá̄k jùu thīi bâan phôm nỳŋ pii
   He'll stay at my house for one year.
6. thììñīì, sàam naathìì kháw ca phák jùu thììñīì sàam naathìì
   He'll stay here three minutes.

**g) Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. m̀āj ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca ẁé thììaw thìì room rýplàaw</td>
<td>plàaw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are you going to stop in Rome?</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca m̀āj ẁé thììaw thìì teeharan rýkhráp</td>
<td>ẁé khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aren't you going to stop in Teheran?</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. m̀āj ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca ẁé thìì bànn phôm rýplàaw</td>
<td>plàaw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are you going to stop at my house?</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca m̀āj ẁé thìì hònkoŋ rýkhráp</td>
<td>ẁé khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aren't you stopping at Hong Kong?</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. m̀āj ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca ẁé thììaw thìì jììpùn rýplàaw</td>
<td>plàaw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are you stopping in Japan?</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ẁé</td>
<td>khun ca m̀āj ẁé thìì haawàaj rýkhráp</td>
<td>ẁé khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aren't you stopping at Hawaii?</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**THAI BASIC COURSE**

h) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. rya, njujóok, farânsèet | khâw ca lonŋ rya thîi njujóok paj
khûn thîi farânsèet |
| | He'll get on a boat in New York and get off in France. |
| 2. khrôngbin, woochintân, krunthêep | khâw ca khûn khrôngbin thîi woochintân lé lonŋ thîi krunthêep |
| | He'll get on a plane in Washington and get off in Bangkok. |
| 3. rôtfaj, ajúthajaa, chiammàj | khâw ca khûn rôtfaj thîi ajúthajaa lé lonŋ thîi chiammàj |
| | He'll get on the train in Ayuthaya and get off in Chiangmai. |
| 4. ryabaj, pàaknmâm, baanpuu | khâw ca lonŋ ryabaj thîi pàaknmâm lé khûn thîi baanpuu |
| | He'll get on a sail boat at Paknam and get off at Bangpu. |
| 5. thésksîí, hûalamphoon, prajašñîi klæaŋ | khâw ca khûn thésksîí thîi hûalamphoon lé lonŋ thîi prajašñîi klæaŋ |
| | He'll get in a taxi at Hualampong (Station) and get off at the Main Post Office. |
| 6. ryacâaŋ, thâapracan, sirirâat | khâw ca lonŋ ryacâaŋ thîi thâapracan lé khûn thîi sirirâat |
| | He'll get on a rented boat at Pracan landing and get off at Siriraj. |
1) **Sentence Combination Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence 1 and 2</th>
<th>Sentence 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam dâj wâa (kháw) mîi phîan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw mîi phîan khon thaj</td>
<td>khon thaj khon nyê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khon nyê</td>
<td>He remembered he had a Thai friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam dâj wâa khun phâk jùu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun phâk jùu thîinaj</td>
<td>thîinaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He remembered where you were staying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam dâj wâa khun phûut wâa araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun phûut wâa araj</td>
<td>He remembered what you said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam dâj wâa khun kheêj paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun kheêj paj myaîn thaj</td>
<td>myaîn thaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He remembered that you had been in Thailand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam dâj wâa kháw phôp khun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kháw phôp khun thîî lóon doon</td>
<td>thîî lóon doon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lóon doon</td>
<td>He remembered he met you in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. kháw cam dâj</td>
<td>kháw cam daj wâa khun pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun pen khâa-râatchakaan</td>
<td>khâa-râatchakaan kràsuañ tàañ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kràsuañ tàañ prathêet</td>
<td>prathêet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He remembered that you were a State Department civil servant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24.3 BASIC EPISODE: Part II

khun thooms maa thynn krunthEEP mya wan thii sdroi
sinhhakhom. khaw phak juu thii roonrees imphiiritm
tron sooj rum ryydi. phanraajaa le luukluuk khsoi
khaw chOop roonrees ni1 maaak phro juu klaj sathannhut,
raanaahsan le raan khajkhsoi. thii roonrees mii
sara wajnaam. khaw waaaj naam kan thukwan

khun thooms maa juu myan thaj daaj saam wan. khaw
cam daaj waa khaw mi1 phyen khon thaj khon nyen. phyen
khonnii kheej rian juu kaa khaw thii mahawiththalaj
jeel mya slp pii thii leew. khaw kheej rian juu chaan
diau kaa phyen khonnii laaj pii. khaw chOop kan maaak
tee khun thooms maa saap waa phyen khaw juu thii naj.
khaw cam daaj waa phyen khonnii chiiy khun sunthoon
naamsakun mahasak. wannaaj khaw pEet saamut thoorasap.
khaw phop chiiy khun sunthoon. khaw thoo paa haa khun
sunthoon thii baan. khun sunthoon diicaj maaak. khaw
cheen khun thooms le khrOopkhrua paa thaan khaw thii
baan. khaw maa rap khun thooms le khrOopkhrua thii
hooten le phaa paa baan khaw. baan khun sunthoon saaj
maak. khun sunthoon jaaak haj khun thooms le khrOopkhrua
phak juu kaa khaw. khaw chuan khun thoomas te khun
thoomas maa jaaak ropkuan khun sunthoon.
24.4 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE:  Part II

1. khun thoomás maa thỳŋ kruŋthēep mỳaràj
2. kháw phák jùu thìinŋj
3. khróopkhrua khùŋ khun thoomás chëop roongrōem thīl
   kháw phák jùu máj . phró araj
4. khun thoomás kheej mìi phỳan thaj máj
5. kháw rùucàk kan dâj jàŋŋaj
6. khun thoomás sàap máj wâa phỳan khùŋ kháw jùu thìinŋj
7. kháw cam chỳy lè naamsakun khùŋ phỳan kháw dâj máj
8. kháw phóp khun sùnthoon dâj jàŋŋaj
9. khun sùnthoon dìicaj máj
10. kháw cheen khun thoomás lè khróopkhrua paj bāan rỳplàaw
11. khun thoomás paj bāan khun sùnthoon jàŋŋaj
12. khun sùnthoon jàak hâj khun thoomás lè khróopkhrua phák
    jùu kàp kháw máj
13. kháw tham jàŋŋaj
14. thammaj khun thoomás thỳŋ máj phák bāan khun sùnthoon

24.5 EXERCISES

One student will describe a travel experience he has had using the basic episode as a model. Other students will ask questions about it.
24.6 VOCABULARY

eethén
baanpuu
chaaj
chaajthalee
dilcāj
haawaj
hôŋkoŋ
jeel
kà
mahāsàk
niw delhii
pààknáam
pensilweenia
pracam
rópkuaŋ
ryabaj
ryacāŋ
sà̄pdàa / sà̄ppadàa
sà wàajnáam
sàwit
sìrìrāt
sûnthoon
teeharaan
thalee
thoomás
wé

Athens
Bangpu (name of a tambon)
edge, rim, border
the beach
to be glad
Hawaii
Hong Kong
Yale (University)
to guess, estimate
Mahasak (last name)
New Delhi
Pakram (name of an Amphoe)
Pennsylvania
to be stationed
to trouble, bother
sail boat
rented boat
week (elegant usage)
swimming pool
Switzerland
Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
Sunthorn (male first name)
Teheran
sea
Thomas
to stop in, over
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

25.0 BASIC DIALOG: Making an Acquaintance

A: pen araj paj khráp mâj sabaaj rě
What's the matter with you? Aren't you well?

B: plàaw khráp, mâj dâj pen araj nuan noon
Nothing's the matter. I'm sleepy.
mýakhyynní paj nnaanlían
Last night I went to a party so I got to bed a little late.
leej noon dýk paj nòoj

A: sanùk mâj khráp
Was it fun? (Did you have a good time?)

B: sanùk mâak
Yes, it was. (I certainly did.)

A: phòp khraj bāan
Who did you meet there? (Who was there?)

B: lâaj khon khráp
A lot of people.
phôm dâj phýan mâj lâaj khon
I made a lot of new friends.
ño, phôm phòp khonhaj khon
Oh, I ran into a Thai.
nyŋ
kháw bóok wâa pen phýan kâw
He said he was an old friend of yours.
khun

A: kháw chëy araj
What was his name?

B: phôm cam mâj dâj
I can't remember.
khâw hâj naàmbët phôm
He gave me his card, but
tè phôm lýym aw maa
I forgot to bring it.
25.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) pen araŋ (paj) 'What's the matter (with you)?' is the normal way to inquire about what pain or ailment someone has.

1. If one has some kind of disease, he may respond as follows:

phơm pen wàt 'I have a cold.'
phơm pen khâ† 'I have a fever.'
phơm pen khâjwàt 'I have the flu.'

Or he may respond as follows:

phơm pen rɔok bìt 'I have dysentery.'
phơm pen rɔok sâjtan 'I have appendicitis.'
phơm pen rɔok àhiwaa 'I have cholera.'

2. If one has an ache or pain, he will give its location:

phơm pùat hàũa (Lit. I ache in the head.)
'I have a headache.'

phơm pùat thóøn (Lit. I ache in the area of the intestines.)
'I have a stomach ache.'

b) sanûk means 'to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time, etc.' It may have a place, thing, person, or activity as subject.

c) dâj has the meaning 'get, obtain, procure' when used as the main verb, as in the sentence phơm dâj phỳan màj lâaj khon 'I made a lot of new friends.'

d) There are several ways to indicate 'lateness' in Thai. The choice is determined by the time of day referred to. Observe the following chart:
THAI BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Day</th>
<th>Early</th>
<th>Late</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morning</td>
<td>cháaw</td>
<td>sânaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tèe cháaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late in the day</td>
<td>wan</td>
<td>khâm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tèe wan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening</td>
<td>hūakhâm</td>
<td>dyk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tèe hūakhâm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anytime</td>
<td>rew</td>
<td>cháa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) When tèe (often ta) occurs before cháaw, wan, etc., it indicates that the speaker considers the earliness to be unexpected or unusual.

f) bỳa means 'to be bored'; nãabỳa means 'boring'. Observe the following examples:

phôm bỳa (kháw, duu nánsû, etc.) 'I'm bored (with him, studying, etc.).'

kháw tham hâj phôm bỳa (He causes me to be bored.) 'He bores me.'

nãń rỳanní nãabỳa 'This movie is boring.'

g) sanûk means 'to have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself' or 'to be fun, entertaining'. Observe the following examples:

kháw sanûk 'He's having a good time.'
thampaan thînî mât sanûk 'Working here is not fun.'
kháw pen khon sanûk 'He's a fun person.'
h) leton 'so' is a word used to connect conditional sentences with result sentences, thus

khaw pen khhon nayba raw leej maj jaaak khujakkhaw
'He's a dull person so we don't want to talk with him.'

1) haj 'to give' is followed by the object and then by the recipient of the object.

khaw haj naajyy phoom  'He gave a book to me.'

25.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khaw maa thamaan saj thukwan tese wanni khaw
   maa {tese chaaw
   }ta
   He comes to work late everyday, but today he came early.

2. khaw klap bahn kham thukwan tese wanni khaw klap
   bahn {tese wan
   }ta
   He goes home late everyday, but today he went home early.

3. khaw khaw noon djk thuk khyn tese khynnii khaw
   noon {tese hukham
   }ta
   She goes to bed late every night, but tonight she went to bed early.
4. khâw maa cháa samşê têe wanníf maa rew.
   He always comes late, but today he came early.

5. khruu khon nán ñôk càak hêñ cháa samşê têe wanníf
   khâw ñôk càak hêñ rew.
   That teacher always comes out of the room
   late, but today she came out early.

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. khâw khâw noon thîaŋ khyyn
   He went to bed at midnight.

2. khâw thaan aaháñakhâm weelaa
   hâa thûm
   She ate dinner at 11 p.m.

3. khâw tyyn noon tîi hâa
   He got up at 5 a.m.

4. khâw maa roongrian weelaa mooŋ
   cháaw khrûŋ
   He come to school at 7:30 a.m.

5. khâw bôok wâa khâw ca klàp
   maa wan thîî sip têe khâw
   klàp maa wan thîî hâa
   He said he'd return on the
tenth, but he returned on
the fifth.

Pattern 2

1. khâw khâw noon dyk.
   He went to bed late.

2. khâw thaan dyk.
   She ate late.

3. khâw tyyn noon cháaw
   He got up early.

4. khâw maa roongrian têe
   cháaw
   He came to school early.

5. khâw klàp maa rew.
   He came back early.
6. kháw kháw nōn dyk thúk khyn
   tès khyynnî kháw kháw nōn
   weelaa sōn thûm
   He goes to bed late every
   night, but tonight he went
   to bed at 8 p.m.
   He went to bed early.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw pen araj paj</td>
<td>kháw māj sabaaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with him?</td>
<td>He's ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun pen araj paj</td>
<td>phôm pùat, sîisâ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with you?</td>
<td>I have a headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun cîm pen araj</td>
<td>kháw pen wàt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with Jim?</td>
<td>He has a cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. phanraajaa khun pen araj paj</td>
<td>kháw pen khâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with your wife?</td>
<td>She has a fever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khun pen araj paj</td>
<td>phôm māj dâj pen araj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with you?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khun pen araj(paj)</td>
<td>phôm pen khâjwàt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with you?</td>
<td>I have the flu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. kháw pen araj (paj)</td>
<td>kháw pen rôok bît</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with him?</td>
<td>He has dysentery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. ลูกชายครับคุณเป็นอาเจียน(ปาย)  what's the matter with your son?  ข้ามพุงท้อง
He has a belly ache.

9. คุณพ่อคุณเป็นอาเจียน(ปาย)  what's the matter with your father?  ข้ามมายสบายมาก ข้ามเป็นร้อนในไข้
He's very ill. He has cholera.

d) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

ñaanlíañ sanuk mái
Was the party fun?

1. náŋsyỳ náŋsyỳ sanùk mái
Is the book amusing?

2. nāŋ nāŋ sanùk mái
Was the movie fun?

3. kruŋtheep kruŋtheep sanùk mái
Is Bangkok fun?

4. rian phaasãa thaj rian phaasãa thaj sanùk mái
Is studying Thai fun?

5. jùu thîinì jùu thîinì sanùk mái
Is it enjoyable living here?

6. khuj kàp khaw khuj kàp kháw sanùk mái
Is talking to her fun?
### e) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>ṇaan sanûk māj</td>
<td>sanûk māak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the work amusing?</td>
<td>Very amusing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>ṇaan sanûk māj</td>
<td>māj sanûk lēej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the work amusing?</td>
<td>Not at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>nāṅsûy lēmniî sanûk māj</td>
<td>sanûk māak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>jùu thîînî sanûk māj</td>
<td>māj sanûk lēej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is living here fun?</td>
<td>Not at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>rian phaasâa thaj sanûk māj</td>
<td>sanûk māak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is studying Thai fun?</td>
<td>It's a lot of fun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>khuj kâp khâw sanûk māj</td>
<td>māj sanûk lēej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is talking to her fun?</td>
<td>Not at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>khâw phûîut sanûk māj</td>
<td>sanûk māak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>nāñ sanûk māj</td>
<td>māj sanûk lēej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Was the movie fun?</td>
<td>Not at all.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f) **Lexical Drill**

**Pattern 1**

1. น้าน มะจ ซัน accur
   The working isn't amusing.

2. ท่าน่านั่น มะจ ซัน accur
   Working here isn't enjoyable.

3. น้านรี่ ยันนิ่น มะจ ซัน accur
   This movie isn't amusing.

4. น้านสั่นย์ ลีมนิ่น มะจ ซัน accur
   This book isn't amusing.

5. รียน ฟ้าสิ่น ทาย มะจ ซัน accur
   Studying Thai isn't fun.

**Pattern 2**

1. น้าน น่าภ่า
   The work's dull.

2. ท่าน่านั่น ภ่านิ่น น่าภ่า
   Working here is boring.

3. น้านรี่ ยันนิ่น น่าภ่า
   This movie is dull.

4. น้านสั่นย์ ลีมนิ่น น่าภ่า
   This book is boring.

5. รียน ฟ้าสิ่น ทาย น่าภ่า
   Studying Thai is boring.

g) **Lexical Drill**

**Pattern 1**

1. ราว ซัน accur
   We're having fun.

2. ระวักขยีน ภักข์ก่อน ซัน accur
   Last night everybody had fun.

3. ภยัน ฟอ่ม ซัน accur
   My friend is having a good time.

4. ฟอ่ม ซัน accur
   I'm having fun.

**Pattern 2**

1. ราว มะจ ภ่า
   We are not (being) bored.

2. ระวักขยีนิ่น มะจ มิ่น ขร่าจ ภ่า
   Last night nobody found it dull.

3. ภยัน ฟอ่ม มะจ ภ่า
   My friend isn't bored.

4. ฟอ่ม มะจ ภ่า
   I'm not being bored.
h) **Lexical Drill**

**Pattern 1**

1. raw mâj sanûk  
   We're not enjoying ourselves.

2. mâj mii khraj sanûk  
   Nobody's having fun.

3. khun coon mâj sanûk  
   John is not enjoying himself.

4. phôm mâj sanûk  
   I'm not having a good time.

**Pattern 2**

1. raw bỳa  
   We are bored.

2. thúk khon bỳa  
   Everybody is being bored.

3. khun coon bỳa  
   John is finding it dull.

4. phôm bỳa  
   I'm being bored.

1) **Substitution Drill**

**Cue**

**Pattern**

- kháw pen khon sanûk  
  He's an amusing person.

1. phyân khun khonnán  
   phyân khun khonnán pen khon sanûk  
   That friend of yours is an amusing person.

2. khun praphâat  
   khun praphâat pen khon sanûk  
   Mr. Prapas is an amusing person.

3. khun phôo phôm  
   khun phôo phôm pen khon sanûk  
   My father is an amusing person.

4. khun  
   khun pen khon sanûk  
   You are an amusing person.
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. nákrian mâj khonnán
   nákrian mâj khonnán pen khon sanûk
   That new student is an amusing person.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. m̀ya khyynní phôm paj ńaannlíaj leaj noon dyk paj nòoj
   Last night I went to a party, so I got to bed late.

2. khâw thîaw mâak (khâw) leaj mâj sabaaj
   He goes out a lot, so he's not well.

3. khâw riîp paj myaânthaj (khâw) leaj mâj mîi weelaa
   wé thîaw jûròop
   He was in such a hurry to get to Thailand, that
   he didn't have time to stop off in Europe.

4. phôm khît wâa khun sâap leéw (phôm) leaj mâj dâj
   bòok khun
   I thought you already knew, so I didn't tell you.

5. phôm riîp bòok càak bân (phôm) leaj lyym aw ńeën maa
   I left home in such a hurry, that I forgot to
   bring any money.

6. thêəwnníí mâj mîi thîicòotróî phôm leaj tзон maa rôtmee
   There's no place to park around here, so I had
   to take the bus.

7. wanníî, phanrajaa phôm tзон cháj rôt phôm leaj tзон
   maa thêksíî
   Today my wife had to use the car, so I had to
   come by taxi.
8. kháw pen khon náabyà raw leaj màj jaàk khuj kàp kháw
    He's such a dull person that we don't want to
talk with him.

9. wanní phanrajaa ka lûukphôm paj thìaw kan phôm leaj
tõøŋ jùu bân khon diaw
    Today my wife and children went out, so I had
to stay home alone.

10. phûujîŋ khonnán khít wàa khun têŋŋan lësw (kháw) leaj
    màj jáak paj thìaw kàp khun
    That woman thought you were married, so she didn't
    want to go out with you.

11. kháw phûút phaasaà aŋkît màj dàj phôm leaj tòøŋ
    phûút phaasaathaj kàp kháw
    She doesn't speak English, so I must talk Thai to her.

12. phôm wé bân phyan leaj klàp bân cháa paj nòoŋ
    I stopped at a friend's house, so I got home late.

k) Transformation Drill (Make a statement expressing what is
    in the conversational exchange using
    leaj.)

Pattern 1 and 2

1. sômsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun
    thỳŋ noon dỳk paj
    Why did you go to
    bed so late?

sawàt: phró phôm paj ñaañliâŋ
    Because I went to
    a party.

Pattern 3

khun sawàt paj ñaañliâŋ
kháw leaj noon dỳk paj nòoŋ

Because I went to
so he went to bed late.
2. สดสมัค: ylvania kon coon thóñ
mach sabaaj

Why isn't John well?

สวัสดี: phró kháw than khák paj
nòoj

Because he ate too much.

3. สดสมัค: khun sawàt, thammaj khun
mach wé thiaw júroòp

Why didn't you stop in Europe?

สวัสดี: phró phom mach mii weelaa
kháw leaj mach dâj wé thiaw júroòp.

Because I didn't have time.

สวัสดี: khun sawàt mach mii weelaa
khun coon khàprót mach pen
leaj tén maa rótme.

Because he can't drive.

4. สดสมัค: thammaj khun coon maa
rótme

Why did John come by bus?

สวัสดี: phró kháw khàprót mach pen
leaj tén maa rótme.

Because he can't drive, so he came by bus.
5. sõmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun thỳñ phùut phaasàa ankrìt kàp khàw
    Why do you speak English with them?
sawàt: phró khàw phùut phaasàa thaj màj pen
      khàw phùut phaasàa thaj màj pen khun sawàt lèeaj ten phùut phaasàa ankrìt ka khàw
      Because they can't speak Thai.

6. sõmsàk: thammaj khun cím màj chòop phùujìn khonnàn
      Why doesn't Jim like that woman?
sawàt: phró phùujìn khonnàn màj sùaj
      phùujìn khonnàn màj sùaj khun cím lèeaj màj chòop khàw
      Because that woman isn't pretty.
That woman isn't pretty, so Jim doesn't like her.

7. sõmsàk: khun prichaa khráp,
      thammaj khun thỳñ màj khàwcaj la khráp
      Why didn't you understand?
sawàt: phró phôm màj dâj faŋ
      khun prichaa màj dâj faŋ khàw lèeaj màj khàwcaj
      Because I didn't listen.
Pricha didn't listen, so he didn't understand.
8. sōmsàk: khun sawàt khrap, mỳakhyyynnìf, thammaj khun thỳŋ rìf p klàp la khrap

Why were you in such a hurry to leave last night, Sawat?

sawàt: phró phöm byà mỳakhyyynnìf khun sawàt byà khàw lèaj rìf p klàp

Because I was bored. Last night Sawat was bored, so he left in a hurry.

1) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khàw hâj naambàt phöm</td>
<td>He gave me his card.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. nànsỳy lèm nìí khàw hâj nànsỳy lèm nìí phöm
   He gave me this book.

2. ñèên khàw hâj ñèên phöm
   He gave me some money.

3. kłënthàajrûup khàw hâj kłënthàajrûup phöm
   He gave me a camera.

4. wítthajú khàw hâj wítthajú phöm
   He gave me a radio.

5. bëe thoorasàp khàw hâj bëe thoorasàp phöm
   She gave me her telephone number.
6. rûup  khâw hâj rûup phôm  
   She gave me a picture.

7. pàakaa  khâw hâj pàakaa phôm  
   They gave me a pen.

8. samùt  khâw hâj samùt phôm  
   They gave me a notebook.

m) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phôm dâj phûn màj láaj khon.</td>
<td>I made many new friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nângsyÝ</td>
<td>phôm dâj nângsyÝ láaj lêm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nângsyÝ diidii</td>
<td>phôm dâj nângsyÝ diidii láaj lêm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ñeen (róoj)</td>
<td>phôm dâj ñeen láaj róoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. naalikaa</td>
<td>phôm dâj naalikaa láaj ryan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. rûup</td>
<td>phôm dâj rûup láaj baj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. rañwan (jàañ)</td>
<td>phôm dâj rañwan láaj jàañ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. lûuknñoûng kèn kèn phôm dâj lûuknñoûng kérkèn lâaj khon.
   I procured several skilled subordinates.

n) **Response Drill** (Give negative answers to the questions.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. pen araj (paj)</td>
<td>mâj dâj pen araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter with you?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kamlán tham araj</td>
<td>mâj dâj tham araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you doing?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. phûut araj</td>
<td>mâj dâj phûut araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you say?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. paj nãj</td>
<td>mâj dâj paj nãj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are you going?</td>
<td>Nowhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. rûucâk khraj</td>
<td>mâj rûucâk khraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who do you know?</td>
<td>I don't know anybody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. jâak phôp khraj</td>
<td>mâj jàak phôp khraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who do you want to meet?</td>
<td>Nobody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. khít araj</td>
<td>mâj dâj khít araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you thinking about?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sûy araj</td>
<td>mâj dâj sûy araj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you buy?</td>
<td>Nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. mîi khraj hên bânã</td>
<td>mâj mîi khraj hên</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did anybody see anything?</td>
<td>Nobody saw anything.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.3 EXERCISES

a) One student asks another what is the matter with him. The second responds with some type of ailment.

b) One student asks another whether he considers certain people, places, things, or activities to be amusing or fun. The second responds according to his opinion. The questions may be specific (the person you met at the party last night, etc.) of they may be general (learning Thai, etc.)

c) Student A will ask Student B why he did or didn't do something (ex: Why did you go to bed late last night?). Student B will give a reason (ex: Because I went to a party). Student C will pretend he didn't understand and will ask Student A what was said (ex: Excuse me, I didn't understand. What did he say?). Student A will tell him. Use the following examples as a model:

Student A: mỹakhyyynníi, thammaj khun thýŋ noon dỳk paj
Student B: phró phóm paj ɲaanlían
Student C: khɔthɔt, phóm mâj khǎwcaj, khǎw bɔok
  wâa araj na khráp
Student A: mỹakhyyynníi, khǎw paj ɲaanlían leej noon
dỳk paj nòoŋ

25.4 VOCABULARY

bỳa            to be bored
dâj            to get, obtain, procure
hũa (hũa)      head
(pen) khâj      (to have) (a) fever
(pen) khâjwât   (to have) flu
lûuknóɔŋ (khon) subordinate
lyym           to forget

414
nâabỳa  to be dull
nañ (rîan)  movie (story)
пуанноон  to be sleepy
pùat  to ache, have a pain
raañwan (jàaŋ)  prize (kind)
(pen) rôok âhiwaa  (to have) cholera
(pen) rôok blt  (to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan  (to have) appendicitis
sanùk  to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sëisà  head (elegant word)
tèe | cháaw  very early
ta  
thoòŋ  stomach, intestinal area
(pen) wàt  (to have) a cold
LESSON TWENTY-SIX

26.0 BASIC DIALOG: Discussion of Wedding Gifts

A: khun sawât há? thâam araj nòoj, dâj mây
B: jindii há?

Mr. Sawat, may I ask you something?
Gladly.

A: wan aathít níi, phûm dâj râp chèen paj náanlíâñ
B: náan araj há?

This Sunday I received an invitation to a party.
What kind of a party?

A: náan tênnâan
phûm mây sâap wâa
câ sûy araj hâj khâw dii
B: hâj khônchâj sihâ

A wedding.
I don't know what I should buy to give them.
Give something to use.

A: chên araj mâñ
B: chên khôräkkhrua
sâmrâp câwsâw,
khôrä châj faj fâa
rû khôn sûajsûaj
sâmrâp têñ bân

What for example?
Kitchen utensils for the bride, electrical devices or pretty things to decorate the house with.

A: toonthî† khun tênnâan,
khun dâj khônkhwan
araj mâñ há?
B: phûm dâj thán nêen lê khôn há?
phûn bañh Khon kô hâj khôn,
bañ Khon kô hâj nêen
jât jât sùan mâak hâj nêen

When you got married, what are some of the presents you got?
I got money and things. Some friends gave things; some gave money. Most of the relatives gave money.

416
26.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) Note the following variant forms of the male and female polite particles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement:</th>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Informal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>khráp</td>
<td>há'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>khâ</td>
<td>hâ/há</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question:

| Male       | khráp  | há'      |
| Female     | khâ    | há       |

b) The relationship between чеén 'to invite' and дâj ráп чеén 'to be invited' is similar to the active: passive voice relationship in English.

kháw чеén phôm paj naanlián 'They invited me (to go) to a party.'

phôm дâj ráп чеén paj naanlián 'I was invited (to go) to a party.'

c) Compounds like thaân + roonrián refer to institutions as agents rather than as places. Observe the following examples:

thaân roonrián hâj nápsýy phôm 'The school gave me some books.'

thaân râatchakaan hâj neen roonrián pii la pêst phan bàat 'The government gives 8,000 baht a year to the school.'
26.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The object complement of ᵃ’haj ‘to give’ normally precedes the personal complement as in the following example:

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ y 肟ม ‘He gave me a book.’

1. Specifier phrases of the object complement follow immediately after it (i.e. before the personal complement).

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ ที่ี kháw pleę 肟ม ‘He gave me some books he had translated.’

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ ส่อน ล่ém น่าน ‘He gave me those two books.’

2. Quantifier phrases of the object complement occur after the personal complement:

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ 肟ม ส่อน ล่ém ‘He gave me two books.’

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ kháw khon ₂ ₄ ₄ ₂ ‘He gave them two books apiece.’

b) Constructions of the type khon ₂ ₄ ₂ ‘two books apiece’ are called Distributive constructions. They are used to refer to the distribution of objects according to a certain ratio. The distribution may refer to space as in the example above, or it may refer to time. Examples of each type are given below:

1. Space distribution:

kháw ᵃ’haj น้างสี่ น้ากรียาน khon ₂ ส่อน ล่ém ‘He gave the students two books apiece.’
2. Time distribution:

kháw háj nén khoncháj dyan
la 800 ɓaat

'He gave his servant 800 baht a month.'

c) ɓ frequently occurs before the main verb phrase in each of the sentences in parallel sentence constructions. It is not translated.

nákrian baŋ khon ɓ kén, baŋ khon ɓ màj kén

'Some students are good; some aren't.'

d) When Noun Phrases with more than one noun head are replaced by Classifier Phrases, the classifier used in the replacement is determined by the types of nouns in the Noun Phrase:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Phrase</th>
<th>Classifier Phrase Replacement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɓáñ khruu lé mío</td>
<td>ɓáñ s̀ọn khon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Both teachers and doctors.'</td>
<td>'both kinds of people'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɓáñ nén lé aahăn</td>
<td>ɓáñ s̀ọn jàaŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Both money and food.'</td>
<td>'both kinds of things'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɓáñ krúnthêep lé chianmáj</td>
<td>ɓáñ s̀ọn hèsèn (or)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Both Bangkok and, Chiangmai.'</td>
<td>'both places' (or)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ɓáñ s̀ọn myàn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'both cities'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) When ɗ is occurs with questions, it may indicate that the person asking the question is requesting advice (whether a certain course of action is good, suitable, or advisable) or is asking for a suggestion. The response, if short and definite, usually ends with sikhráp.
THAI BASIC COURSE

Question + dīl
phōm ca hâj araŋ dīl
'What shall I give?'

Response
hâj khōnchâj sihâ
'Give something useful.'

26.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1 and 2
1. khâw cheeŋ phōm paj ŋaanliāŋ
   They invited me to a party.

2. khâw cheeŋ phōm
   paj ŋaan tēnjaan khōŋ khâw
   She invited me to her wedding.

3. khâw cheeŋ phōm paj prachum thīi myāŋ bōossatān
   He invited me to a meeting in Boston.

4. khâw māj dāŋ cheeŋ phōm paj ŋaan thīi sathān̄hūt
   He didn't invite me to the party at the Embassy.

5. khâw māj dāŋ cheeŋ phōm paj ŋaan nākriāŋ kāw
   He didn't invite me to the party for former students.

Pattern 3
phōm dāŋ rāp cheeŋ paj ŋaanliāŋ
I got an invitation to a party.

phōm dāŋ rāp cheeŋ paj ŋaan tēnjaan khōŋ khâw
I received an invitation to her wedding.

phōm dāŋ rāp cheeŋ paj prachum thīi myāŋ bōossatān
I received an invitation to a meeting in Boston.

phōm māj dāŋ rāp cheeŋ paj ŋaan thīi sathān̄hūt
I didn't get an invitation to the party at the Embassy.

phōm māj dāŋ rāp cheeŋ paj ŋaan nākriāŋ kāw
I didn't get an invitation to the party for former students.
b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw hâj araj khun khráp</td>
<td>kháw hâj ñên phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did he give you?</td>
<td>He gave me some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thaan roonrian hâj araj</td>
<td>thaan roonrian hâj náŋṣy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khráp</td>
<td>rian phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did the school give you?</td>
<td>The school gave me a textbook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. toon thī khun tēŋnaaŋ;</td>
<td>toon thī phôm tēŋnaaŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naaj khōŋ khun hâj araj</td>
<td>naaj khōŋ phôm hâj wīthajū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khráp</td>
<td>phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did your boss give you when you got married?</td>
<td>When I got married, my boss gave me a radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. wan khrītsamâat pī nī,</td>
<td>phôm khît wāa phôm ca hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun ca hâj araj phanrajaa</td>
<td>khrīṣaŋkrūa khâw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khráp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to give your wife this Christmas?</td>
<td>I think I'll give her kitchen implements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phīchaaj khun hâj araj</td>
<td>phīchaaj phôm hâj pàakkaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khráp</td>
<td>phôm khráp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did your older brother give you?</td>
<td>My older brother gave me a pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khun ca hâj araj lûukchaaj</td>
<td>phôm ca hâj dīnsō lē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khráp</td>
<td>samūt lûukchaaj phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to give your son?</td>
<td>I'm going to give my son a pencil and a notebook.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. ภัยันภัยัน ขัน ขอถ้า ขวัญ แราจ ขัน ขราป
ekháw hâj nên pʰôm khráp
What kind of presents did your friends give you?
They gave me money.

8. นักพะาส้าก ขัน นัน ถ้า แราจ ขัน ขราป
kháw hâj náŋsyỳ thî̀ kháw plex pʰôm khráp
What did that linguist give you?
He gave me a book he translated.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ขัน โพรอ ขัน มีข้อ ขอถ้า ขัน หำจ นêน ขัน ทำวraj ขรำป</td>
<td>khun phôo khun mîe khoŋ khun hâj nên khun thâwraj khráp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How much money did your parents give you?                                  My parents gave me five thousand baht. |
| 2. ขำว หำจ นêน ขอนขำจ ขำว ดยาน ลา ทำวraj ขรำป | kháw hâj nên khoncháj kháw dyan la thâwraj khráp |
How much does he give his servants per month?                               He gives his servants four hundred baht per month. |
| 3. ท้ำณร้ัถชาก้าน หำจ นêน รูงรีน ปี ลา ทำวraj ขรำป | thaaŋrâatchakaan hâj nên roonrîn pii la thâwraj khráp |
How much does the government give the school a year?                        The government gives the school 8,000 baht a year. |
4. thaanrooñrian háj náñsyý nákriían khon la kli lèm khráp
   How many books per student does the school give?

5. thaanráan háj khọñ khwǎn kháw kli chín khráp
   How many presents did the shop give them?

6. kháw háj khọñ khwǎn khun kli jàañ khráp
   How many kinds of presents did he give you?

7. kháw háj náñsyý hōnsamút kli lèm khráp
   How many books did he give to the library?

8. thaankrasuantàanprathet háj nèn khàa náñsyý khun konh la thàwraj khráp
   How much did the State Department give each person for books?
   (lit. give you per person.)

9. khun háj nèn lúuk wan la thàwraj khráp
   How much money per day do you give your child?

NOTE: kès 'to' may be used in rather formal style or in cases where ambiguity might occur as in the examples above in which the receiver might be confused with possessor.
d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj nánṣyỳ sǒon lêm níi khun khráp</td>
<td>nákphaasãa hâj (nánṣyỳ sǒon lêm níi) phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave you these two books?</td>
<td>The linguist gave me these two books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj samùt sli lêmñi phôm khráp</td>
<td>phýan phôm hâj samùt sli lêmñi phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave you these four notebooks?</td>
<td>My friend gave me these four notebooks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj pàakkaa dâam níi khun khráp</td>
<td>khun ànúrōot hâj pàakkaa dâam níi phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave you this pen?</td>
<td>Anuroj gave me this pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj rûup bajñîi khun khráp</td>
<td>phátthanaakoön khon nán hâj rûup bajñîi phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave you this picture?</td>
<td>That community development worker gave me this picture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj phësenthîi sǒon phësn níi khun khráp</td>
<td>boorisât námman hâj phësenthîi sǒon phësenni phôm khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave you these two maps?</td>
<td>The gasoline company gave me these two maps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraj hâj nánṣyỳ phaasãa thaj sìp lêmñi kès hônßamùt khráp</td>
<td>krasuan kaantàanprathêt ameerikan hâj nánṣyỳ sìp lêmñi kès hônßamùt khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who gave these ten Thai language books to the library?</td>
<td>The American Department of State gave these ten books to the library.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
e) Transformation Substitution Drill

**Instructor:** khâw hâj nânsây y lêm nî phôm

: nânsây y sâm lêm

**Student:** khâw hâj nânsây y phôm sâm lêm

Continue by substituting the following items in the appropriate structure.

1. pàakkâa dâam nîi
2. kâwîi sâam tua
3. nên camnuan nîi
4. nên hâa rōcj bâat
5. nên khâa aahnân
6. bân nâm nîi
7. dinsâc thêñ nân
8. weelaa sâm chuânmoön

f) Sentence Construction Drill

Using the cue words given student 1 will form a question with hâj as the main verb. Student 2 will give an appropriate answer. (Study the examples below carefully.)

Example 1.

I: phîân phîân , araj, khun
S 1: phîân phîân hâj araj khun khrâp
S 2: khâw hâj nânsây y phôm khrâp
Example 2:

I:  phŏn phŏn, khun, nāṃsy y kī lēm
S 1:  phŏn phŏn hāj nāṃsy y khun kī lēm khrāp
S 2:  khāw hāj nāṃsy y phŏm sŏng lēm khrāp

Example 3:

I:  phŏn phŏn, khun, nāṃsy y lēm nī, ṭīy
S 1:  phŏn phŏn hāj nāṃsy y lēm nī khun ṭīy khrāp
S 2:  khrāp (or) plāaw khrāp

Example 4:

I:  khraj, khun, nāṃsy y sŏng lēm nī
S 1:  khraj hāj nāṃsy y sŏng lēm nī khun khrāp
S 2:  khruu hāj nāṃsy y sŏng lēm nī phŏm khrāp

Continue by using the following cue words:

1. cāwnāthī jūsīt, khun, araj
2. khun praphāt, khun, phĕnthī prathētthaj, kī phĕn
3. krasuangtānprathēt, nākriān, nēn khānāṃsy, khon la thāwrāj
4. khun, phanrajāa khun, khŏŋkhwān, thūk pīl, rýplāaw
5. khraj, khun, samūt lēm nī
6. khraj, khun, samūt sŏng lēm
7. khraj, khun, tō tua nī
8. khāw, khun, nēn kī bāt
9. khāw, khon chāj, nēn, dyan la, kī bāt
10. khun coon, khun, pəakkaa dāam nī, ṭīy
11. khāw, phŏm, weelaa, nēn chūamoŏŋ
g) **Familiarization Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun sêy araj hâj phanrajaa</td>
<td>phôm sêy pâakkaa hâj khâw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun khrâp</td>
<td>nỳn dàam khrâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you buy your wife?</td>
<td>I bought her a pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. wan khritsamâat pii nâa</td>
<td>phôm ca sêy naalikaa hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun ca sêy araj hâj</td>
<td>khâw khrâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phanrajaa khun khrâp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to buy your wife for Christmas next year?</td>
<td>I’m going to buy a watch for her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. wan tênnâan khôn phâan khun</td>
<td>phôm sêy khôn sâmrap tên</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun sêy araj hâj khâw khrâp</td>
<td>bân hâj khâw khrâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you buy for your friend on his wedding day?</td>
<td>I bought things for decorating the house for him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pii thi lêsw phanrajaa khun</td>
<td>khâw sêy sêa hâj phôm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sêy araj hâj khun</td>
<td>nỳn tua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did your wife buy for you last year?</td>
<td>She bought a shirt for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khun ca sêy araj hâj phyan</td>
<td>phôm khít wâa ca sêy nânây</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun</td>
<td>diidî hâj khâw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to buy for your friend?</td>
<td>I think I’ll buy him some good books.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
h) **Familiarization Drill**

1. A: khun sōmsyi hâj rûup phôm  
   Miss Somsri gave me some pictures.
   
   B: khun dâj rûup càak khun sōmsyi kîi baj khráp  
   How many pictures did you get from Miss Somsri?
   
   A: phôm dâj rûup càak khun sōmsyi hâa baj khráp  
   I got five pictures from Miss Somsri.

2. A: khun phêc khun mês hâj nêh phôm  
   My parents gave me some money.
   
   B: khun dâj nêh càak khun phêchun mês kîi bàat khráp  
   How many baht did you get from your parents?
   
   A: phôm dâj nêh càak khunphêc khun mês lâaj rôcj  
   bàat khráp  
   I got several hundred baht from my parents.

3. A: thaan sathănanthûut hâj nânsyê tàántàan kès  
   roongrian raw.  
   The Embassy gave various books to our school.
   
   B: raw dâj nânsyê càak sathănanthûut kîi lêm khráp  
   How many books did we get from the Embassy?
   
   A: raw dâj nânsyê tàan tàan càak sathănanthûut raaw  
   raaw sâamslp lêm khráp  
   We got about 30 different books from the Embassy.
4. A: krasuan tâanprathêet hâj nên khâa nânsyêy raw  
   The State Department gave us money for buying books.

   B: raw dâj nên khâa nânsyêy khon la thâwrâj khráp  
   How much money did each person get for buying books?

   A: raw dâj nên khâa nânsyêy khon la sâamsîp doolâa khráp  
   We got 30 dollars a person (for buying books).

1) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. khâongkhwân | phôm dâj khâongkhwân  
I got presents.  |
| 2.         | phôm dâj nên lâaj rôoij  
I got several hundred (baht).  |
| 3. nêan    | phôm dâj nêan  
I got work.  |
| 4. bâan    | phôm dâj bâan  
I got a house.  |
| 5. khâongchâj | phôm dâj khâongchâj  
I got things to use.  |
| 6. nânsyêy 2 lêm | phôm dâj nânsyêy sông lêm  
I got two books.  |
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. khryaan fajfaa  phom daj khryaan fajfaa
       I got electrical equipment.

8. wittthajú  phom daj wittthajú
       I got a radio.

9. thii wii  phom daj thii wii
       I got a TV.

10. kawi màj  phom daj kawi màj
       I got a new chair.

11. bëe thoorasàp  phom daj bëe thoorasàp khon khaw
       khon khaw
       I got her telephone number.

12. khanseñ dìi  phom daj khanseñ dìi
       I got good grades.

J) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phom khan ca haj araj khaw</td>
<td>haj nārsýy sikhráp  Give a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What shall I give him?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. phom khan ca sýy araj haj phanrajaa dìi | sýy khryàŋkhrua haj khaw sikhráp |
| What shall I give my wife? | Buy some kitchen utensils for her. |

| 3. phom khan ca thàam khraj dìi | thàam nákphaasşa sikhráp |
| Who shall I ask? | Ask the linguist. |
THAI BASIC COURSE

4. phôm khuan ca thanh thîi thîi ráannîi sikráp ráannîj dii
   Which restaurant shall I eat at?

5. phôm khuan ca paj jaŋŋaj dii paj rútfaj sikráp
   How shall I go? Go by train.

k) **Expansion Drill**

1. araj dii
   sîy araj dii
   khuan ca sîy araj hâj khâw dii
   phôm ca sîy khônkhwân araj hâj khâw dii

2. khraj dii
   cheen khraj dii
   ca cheen khraj dii
   raw khuan ca cheen khraj dii

3. khraj dii
   thâam khraj dii
   khuan ca thâam khraj dii
   phôm khuan ca thâam khraj dii

4. nâj dii
   thînâj dii
   thanh thînâj dii
   thanh aahnâ thanh thînâj dii
   thanh aahnâ khaârwan thînâj dii
   khuan ca thanh aahnâ khaârwan thînâj dii
   raw khuan ca thanh aahnâ khaârwan thînâj dii

431
5. น้ำ ดี
บ่อกน้ำ ดี
ร้านบ่อกน้ำ ดี
ขว่าน ร้านบ่อกน้ำ ดี
ร้านขว่าน ร้านบ่อกน้ำ ดี

6. น้ำ ดี
วันน้ำ ดี
ล้านวันน้ำ ดี
มีก้านล้านวันน้ำ ดี
ขว่าน มีก้านล้านวันน้ำ ดี
ร้านขว่าน มีก้านล้านวันน้ำ ดี

7. จันท์ ดี
ท่าน จันท์ ดี
ขว่าน ท่าน จันท์ ดี
พ่อม ขว่าน ท่าน จันท์ ดี

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

sámràp means 'for' in the sense of function (for doing such and such).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ห่าน้ำห่านิ่ม, sámràp khraj</td>
<td>ห่าน้ำห่านิ่ม, sámràp phûuîpíū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who is this toilet for?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. คว่ิินี่าตานิ่ม, sámràp khraj</td>
<td>คว่ิินี่าตานิ่ม, sámràp khrûu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who is this chair for?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. khr̄āṅkhrua chútní, sāmrāp khr̄aj
   Who is this set of kitchen utensils for?
   khr̄āṅkhrua chútní sāmrāp câws̄aw
   It's for the bride.
   (mâj châj sāmrāp câwbāaw.)
   It's not for the groom.

4. nāns̄ȳ lêm níi, pen n̄en sāmrāp tham araj
   What is this amount of money for (for doing what)?
   nāns̄ȳ lêm níi, châj sāmrāp s̄on nákrian
   This sum of money is for food.
   nāns̄ȳ lêm níi pen n̄en sāmrāp s̄ȳ aahāan
   This sum of money is for food.

5. nāns̄ȳ lêm níi, châj sāmrāp tham araj khr̄ap
   What is this book used for?
   nāns̄ȳ lêm níi, châj sāmrāp prachum nákrian
   This book is used for teaching students.
   nāns̄ȳ lêm níi châj sāmrāp tham araj nákrian
   This book is used for teaching students.

6. hûnníi châj sāmrāp tham araj
   What is this room used for?
   hûnníi châj sāmrāp nákrian
   This room is used for student meetings.

7. bāan lāaj lânj thîi jùu tronkan khâam kâp sathānthūt pen thîi sāmrāp tham araj khr̄ap
   What are the (several) houses opposite the Embassy for?
   pen thîi sāmrāp phanākraan sathānthūt jùu khr̄ap
   They are for Embassy employees to live in.
m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thīi roonrian sōn phaasāa
   khāw cháj náŋsyy araj
   What books do they use at the language school?
   thīi roonrian sōn phaasāa,
   khāw cháj náŋsyy khōon roonrian
   At the language school they use the school's books.

2. khun cháj rót araj
   What kind of car did you use?
   phōm cháj rót ameerikan
   I used an American car.

3. khāw cháj nēn wan la klī
dōo lāa
   How many dollars does he spend per day?
   khāw cháj nēn wan la hāa
   slīp sen.
   He spends 50 cents a day.

4. thīi myān thaj, khāw cháj
   nēn araj
   What kind of money do they use in Thailand?
   thīi myān thaj, khāw cháj
   nēn bāat
   In Thailand they use 'bahts'.

5. khun cháj araj (sāmrap)
   khīyan nāngsyy
   What do you use for writing?
   phōm cháj thāŋ pākkaa lē
   dīnsō (sāmrap) khīyan nāngsyy
   I use both pen and pencil for writing.

n) Expansion Drill

1. bañ khon pen thahān
   nākriān bañ khon pen thahān
   nākriān thīiñī bañ khon pen thahān
   I use both pen and pencil for writing.
2.  "baan lêm dii
náŋṣiy baan lêm dii
náŋṣiy phaaṣa thaj baan lêm dii"

3.  "baan khrýaŋ cháj màj dāj
khrýaŋ baan khrýaŋ cháj màj dāj
khrýaŋ fajfáa baan khrýaŋ cháj màj dāj"

4.  "baan tambon màj mìi náam
tambon baan tambon màj mìi náam
tambon thîi jùu klaj klaj baan tambon màj mìi náam"

o)  **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phýaŋ</td>
<td>phýaŋ baan khon kò hâj khɔɔŋ, baan khon kò hâj nən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some friends gave things; some, money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khrúu</td>
<td>khrúu baan khon kò hâj khɔɔŋ, baan khon kò hâj nən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some teachers gave things; some, money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. mɔɔ</td>
<td>mɔɔ baan khon kò hâj khɔɔŋ, baan khon kò hâj nən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some doctors gave things; some, money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khâarâatchakaan</td>
<td>khâarâatchakaan baan khon kò hâj khɔɔŋ, baan khon kò hâj nən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some employees gave things; some, money.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. cāwnāathī1 cāwnāathī1 baan khon kə hâj khǒơn, baan khon kə hâj ṭen
    Some officials gave things; some, money.

p) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kɛn</td>
<td>nákriam baan khon kə kɛn, baan khon kə mâj kɛn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some students are good; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sʊaj</td>
<td>nákriam baan khon kə sʊaj, baan khon kə mâj sʊaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some students are pretty; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. phûujîn</td>
<td>phûujîn baan khon kə sʊaj, baan khon kə mâj sʊaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some women are pretty; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. dîi</td>
<td>phûujîn baan khon kə dîi, baan khon kə mâj dîi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some women are good; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. nânsýy</td>
<td>nânsýy baan lêm kə dîi, baan lêm kə mâj dîi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some books are good; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sanûk</td>
<td>nânsýy baan lêm kə sanûk, baan lêm kə mâj sanûk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some books are amusing; some aren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
q) **Substitution Drill** (Using บ้าน with time expressions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. wan</td>
<td>บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ มาก, บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ ไม่ มาก&lt;br&gt;Some days he comes, some he doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ชูamooy</td>
<td>บ้าน ชูamooy ข้าว ค่ำ มาก, บ้าน ชูamooy ข้าว ค่ำ ไม่ มาก&lt;br&gt;Some hours he comes; some he doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khran</td>
<td>บ้าน khran ข้าว ค่ำ มาก, บ้าน khran ข้าว ค่ำ ไม่ มาก&lt;br&gt;Some times he comes; some times he doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. wan</td>
<td>บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ มาก, บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ ไม่ มาก&lt;br&gt;Some days he comes; some he doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. paj thamnaan</td>
<td>บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ paj thamnaan, บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ paj thamnaan&lt;br&gt;Some days he goes to work; some he doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. juu bāan</td>
<td>บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ jju bāan, บ้าน wan ข้าว ค่ำ jju bāan&lt;br&gt;Some days she's at home; some she isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. aakāat dii</td>
<td>บ้าน wan aakāat ค่ำ dii, บ้าน wan aakāat ค่ำ ไม่ dii&lt;br&gt;Some days the weather's fine; some it isn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
r) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun rúucák thañ sãamii lé phanrajaa rýkhráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm rúucák kháw thañ sõn khon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know both the husband and wife?</td>
<td>Yes, I know both of them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun chhôop thañ phaasákathaj lé aahxanthaaj rýkhráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm chhôop thañ sõn jàan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like both the Thai language and Thai food?</td>
<td>Yes. I like both (things).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun kheaj jùu thañ farãnsèet lé sapeen rýkhráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm kheaj jùu thañ sõn prathëet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you lived in both France and Spain?</td>
<td>Yes, I have lived in both countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun phùut dâj thañ phaasãa ciin lé phaasãa râtsiá rýkhráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm phùut dâj thañ sõn phaasãa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you speak both Chinese and Russian?</td>
<td>Yes, I can speak both languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khun kheaj jùu thañ chianmàj lé krunthêep rýkhráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm kheaj jùu thañ sõn hëèn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you lived in both Chiangmai and Bangkok?</td>
<td>Yes, I have lived in both places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khun hâj thañ nêñ lé aahxan kháw rýy khráp</td>
<td>khráp, phôm hâj kháw thañ sõn jàan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you give him both money and food?</td>
<td>Yes, I gave him both things.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. тикват дай кхансеэн диї таах кхраав кhraap, тиї кхраавнїї ръй кhraap  
Did he get good grades both  
the time before and this  
time?  
Yes, he got good  
grades both times.

s) Noun Compound Drill

Form Noun Compounds like  
khryaان + {  
Noun  
Verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb or Noun</th>
<th>Noun Compound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. chай</td>
<td>'to use'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khrua</td>
<td>'kitchen'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khьян</td>
<td>'to write'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. тън бъан</td>
<td>'to decorate a house'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.4 EXERCISES

a) Students will discuss invitations they have received  
specifying type of activity, time, and place.

b) Students will discuss various gifts they have given  
and received.

c) One student will ask another's opinion about something  
he is considering doing (giving a gift, etc.). The  
second will give his opinion.
### 26.5 VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anúrōt</td>
<td>Anuroj (male first name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bêe</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camnuan</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cāwsāw (khon)</td>
<td>bride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháj</td>
<td>to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chín</td>
<td>piece (classifier for things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chút</td>
<td>set of (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>há/hâ</td>
<td>the male and female polite particles informal for khráp or khâ, in responses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàañ</td>
<td>classifier for things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jâat/jâatjâat</td>
<td>relative(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàw</td>
<td>old (of non living things), former (of living and non living things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kès</td>
<td>to, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâa</td>
<td>fee, cost, price, value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khanesn (khanesn)</td>
<td>grade, score point(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khoncháj (khon)</td>
<td>servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khôñcháj (jàañ, an, chín)</td>
<td>something useful, utensils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrýañ cháj fájfáa (khrýañ)</td>
<td>electrical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrýañ faj fáa (khrýañ)</td>
<td>electrical equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khryâŋkhrua (khrýañ)</td>
<td>kitchen utensils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrýañ ryan (khrýañ)</td>
<td>furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krasuan kaantâañ prathêt</td>
<td>State Department, Foreign Ministry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khraaw</td>
<td>time(s) (occasion)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

440
THAI BASIC COURSE

khráŋ  
time(s) (occasion) classifier  
for time

khrítsamâat  
Christmas

la or lá  
per, a, the

mâŋ  
some, any (pronominal, another  
form of báan)

naaj (khon)  
boss

nákphaasáa (khon)  
linguistic scientist

nákriian kàw (khon)  
former student

phanákñaan (khon)  
employee

pháthanaakoon (khon)  
community development worker

plee  
to translate

prachum  
meeting

sámràp  
for

si  
particle indicating definiteness  
or emphasis

sùanmâak  
most of, in the main

tèŋ  
to decorate

thii wii (khrýaŋ)  
TV

wítthajú (khrýaŋ, an)  
radio
LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

27.0 BASIC DIALOG: Sending a Servant for a Taxi

naaj: chûaj riak thêksîi
  hâj (phôm) khan nyŋ
  bûok khâw wâa paj
  sâmcoon leej câtsamèk
  paj nôj

khonchâj: ca hâj khâw khooj
  dûaj mâj khâ

naaj: mâj tîn

(khonchâj klîp maa) (The servant returns)

naaj: dâj rôt mâj

khonchâj: dâj khâ

naaj: khâw aw thâwrâj

khonchâj: sîp hâa bût khâ

naaj: mâj phêng paj lê
  thammadaa, weelaa
  chân riak een , khâw
  khît pêt bût thûwnân

khonchâj: toonnîi, kamlân lôek
  nâan.thêksîi hâa jâak
  khâ.tôo mâj khôj dâj

Please call a taxi for me.
Tell him (I'm) going to Sathorn a little past JUSMAG.
Will you have him wait?
That's not necessary.

Did you get one?
Yes, I did.
How much does he want?
Fifteen baht.
That's not too much?
Usually when I get one myself, they charge only 8 baht.
It's quitting time now.
Taxis are hard to find.
Bargaining is hardly possible.
27.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

a) ชัน 'I' is rarely used by men except when speaking to persons of inferior social status. Women use it more often. They used it (1) with persons of inferior social status, (2) to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.\(^1\)

b) ขิตรท่วร่าจ 'figured or reckoned as how much?' is a reduced form of ขิตรรากเหง้าท่วร่าจ 'the price is reckoned as how much?' or ขิตรข้าดออสานท่วร่าจ 'The fare is reckoned as how much?'

c) After stative verbs like แพง 'expensive', แพง paj may occur with the meaning 'excessively, too'. paj occurs in the same position as a reduced form of แพง paj.

d) ตอน ทิ่ม and เวลา ้a both refer to time and may be translated 'when'; however, เวลา usually refers to a special occasion; เวลา ้a ผัก มาจ ข้าวแจจ 'When (ever) I don't understand', whereas, ตอน is used to refer to a particular period of time ตอน ทิ่ม คุณ ปน ดีค 'When you were a child'.

27.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) ห้าจ occurs in constructions of the following kind:

1. As main verb in the sentence (see 26.2a),
2. As secondary verb with the meaning 'for the benefit of, in place of someone else', ข่าจ ข่าจ ร่อที่ห้าจ (ผัก) 'Please drive for me' ข้าว ท่าน อาหาน ห้าจ คุณ ทาน 'He makes food for you (to eat)'!
3. Or as the main verb with a sentence complement. In constructions of this type it has causative meaning. คุณ ค่า ห้าจ ลูก คุณ ร้าน อาราจ 'What are you going to have your children study?'

\(^1\)See Noss, pg. 100.
b) The verbs บํอย 'tell', ขอ 'request', อนุญาต 'permit' and สั่ง 'order' (like จากร, see 22.2b) are followed by หาน plus Sentence Complement when the utterance tends to be causative in effect.

kháw บํอย หาน ยิน ขอ หาน 'He told me to wait for him.'

kháw อนุญาต หาน ยิน รียน ยิน ภาษาอังกฤษ 'He permitted me to study Thai.'

Compare the following two sentences:

1. Kháw หาน ยิน ขอ หาน 'He had me wait for him.'

   The manner in which the request or command is delivered is not specified.

2. Kháw บํอย หาน ยิน ขอ หาน 'He told me to wait for him.'

   The manner in which the command or request is delivered is specified.

c) yen occurs at the end of clauses and has the meaning 1by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help or influence.'

ยิน บํอย ยิน ซาย (ก้าฟซี) yen ขรําป 'I went to buy coffee myself'.
   (Nobody bought it for me.)

1See Noss, pg. 93
27.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

**Question**

1. khraj VectorXd ExecutionContext ExecutionContext
   Khun
   khrap
   Who did your bargaining for you?

2. khraj Khun
   Khon
   Khun
   Khrap
   Who drove the car for you?

3. khraj tham aabhaan Round ExecutionContext
   Khun
   Khrap
   Who cooks for you?

4. phyan Khun
   Paj
   Syy
   Kaafse
   Round
   Khrap
   Did your friend go buy coffee for you?

5. khraj Khian
   Coutmoxaj
   Chabrap
   Nii Round
   Khrap
   Who wrote this letter for you?

6. khraj Haa
   Ban
   Round
   Khrap
   Who looked for a house for you?

7. khraj Syy
   Aabhaan Round
   Khrap
   Who bought food for you?

**Response**

1. phyan Khon thaj Khon phom
   Too (raakhaa) Round phom Khrap
   A Thai friend of mine did the bargaining for me.

2. phom Khrap
   Een
   Khrap
   I drove (it) myself.
   (Maj mii khraj Khrap Haj)
   No one drove for me.

3. phanrajaa phom tham
   (Aabhaan) Round phom Khrap
   My wife cooks for me.

4. plaw Khrap, phom paj syy
   (Kaafse) Een Khrap
   No, I bought (it) myself.

5. phom Khian
   Een Khrap
   I wrote it myself.

6. phom Haa Een Khrap
   I looked myself.

7. phanrajaa phom syy Haj
   phom Khrap
   My wife bought it for me.
### b) Substitution Transformation Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phanrajaa phôm</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj tham ahâan eên I don't cook for myself.</td>
<td>phanrajaa phôm tham hâj (phôm) My wife cooks for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phyan phôm</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj khìjìan cotmâaj chabâp nîi eên I didn't write this letter myself.</td>
<td>phyan phôm khìjìan hâj A friend of mine wrote it for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun thàawoon</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj sîy nângûy khun thàawoon sîy hâj lêm nîi eên I didn't buy this book myself.</td>
<td>Thaworn bought it for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khon khàprôt</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj khàp rôt eên I didn't drive myself.</td>
<td>khon khàprôt khàp hâj The chauffeur drove for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khàw</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj paj sôn cotmâaj eên I didn't send the letter myself.</td>
<td>khàw sôn hâj He sent it for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khàw</td>
<td>phôm mâj dâj khít eên I didn't originate the idea myself.</td>
<td>khàw khít hâj He thought of it for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c) **Response Drill**

Example 1:

- **T:**  pclaken, phyan  
  pen, friend
- **S 1:**  sylv araj khráp  
  What did you buy?
- **S 2:**  sylv pclaken khráp  
  I bought a pen.

- **S 1:**  sylv haj khraj khráp  
  I bought (it) for a friend.
- **S 2:**  sylv haj phyan khráp  

Example 2:

- **T:**  nansy, tua een  
  book, oneself
- **S 1:**  sylv araj khráp  
  What did you buy?
- **S 2:**  sylv nansy khráp  
  I bought a book.

- **S 1:**  sylv haj khraj khráp  
  Who did you buy it for?
- **S 2:**  sylv aan een khráp  
  I bought (it) to read myself.

Continue the drill by having two students form questions and answers like those above using the following cue words:

1. nansy, tua een
2. kaafes, khruu
3. samut, tua een
4. aahsan, phanrajaa
5. kh3on khwan, phyan
6. rot, tua een
d) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cue</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pattern</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chūaj riak thékśi hâj</td>
<td>{chán khan nyŋ phōm}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please call a taxi for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. sòŋ náŋsyy lêmnán</td>
<td>chūaj sòŋ náŋsyy lêmnán hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please send me that book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khâp rót</td>
<td>chūaj khâp rót hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please drive the car for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. tham aahān</td>
<td>chūaj tham aahān hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please cook for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sýy náŋsyyphim</td>
<td>chūaj sýy náŋsyyphim hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please buy newspapers for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. châbâp nyŋ</td>
<td>chūaj sýy náŋsyyphim hâj châbâp nyŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please buy a newspaper for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. nòoj</td>
<td>chūaj sýy náŋsyyphim hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please buy a newspaper for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. töo thooarasâp</td>
<td>chūaj töo thooarasâp hâj nòoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please make a phone call for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw aw náns̄y maa hâj phôm
   He brought a book to me.

2. kháw khân còtmāj paj hâj khunmêe kháw
   He wrote a letter to his mother.

3. kháw sŏn còtmāj hâj phôm
   He sent a letter to me.

4. kháw khâj rôt hâj phôm
   He bought a car for me.

5. kháw sŏn phaas̄a thaj hâj phôm
   He taught Thai to me.

f) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(khun) ca hâj khâw khooj máj</td>
<td>Will you have him wait?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. paj kli moön (khun) ca hâj khâw paj kli moön
   At what time will you have him go?

2. phôm (khun) ca hâj phôm paj kli moön
   At what time will you have me go?

3. tham araj (khun) ca hâj phôm tham araj
   What will you cause me to do?
4. lûuk khun  (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun tham araj
   What will you have your children do?

5. rian araj  (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj
   What will you have your children study?

6. sûy araj  (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun sûy araj
   What will you have your children buy?

7. phôm  (khun) ca hâj phôm sûy araj.
   What will you have me buy?

8. tham jaññaj  (khun) ca hâj phôm tham jaññaj
   How will you have me do (it)?

9. bûk khâw mâj  (khun) ca hâj phôm bûk khâw mâj
   Will you have me tell him?

10. khooj thûññaj  (khun) ca hâj phôm khooj thûññaj
    Where will you have me wait?

   g) Substitution Drill

   Cue  
   Pattern
   khâw hâj thëkañi khooj
   He had the taxi wait.

   1. phôm  
      khâw hâj phôm khooj
      He had me wait.

   2. paj sûy khoññ  
      khâw hâj phôm paj sûy khoññ
      He let me go shopping.
3. phák phðon           kháw hâj phöm phák phðon
          He let me take a rest.
4. mðo hâj             mðo hâj phöm phák phðon
          The doctor had me take a rest.
5. thaan jaa           mðo hâj phöm thaan jaa
          The doctor had me take medicine.
6. jùt thamnaan        mðo hâj phöm jùt thamnaan
          The doctor had me stop working.
7. naaj phôm hâj        naaj phôm hâj phôm jùt thamnaan
          My boss had me stop working.
8. thoo maa hâa khun    naaj phôm hâj phôm thoo maa hâa khun
          My boss had me call you.

h) Transformation-Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháw phûut kàp</td>
<td>kháw hâj khoncháj</td>
<td>kháw hâj khoncháj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khoncháj 'chuâj</td>
<td>tham araj</td>
<td>riâk théksfü hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riâk théksfü hâj</td>
<td></td>
<td>kháw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khan nyûî'</td>
<td>He said to a</td>
<td>What did he have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>servant 'call</td>
<td>the servant do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a taxi for me'</td>
<td>He had the servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>call a taxi.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

451
2. ข้าวผิว กับ ข้าวผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    คน ผ่าน คน
    คุณ ผ่าน น้อย!

    He said to you,
    'Go see John'.

2. ข้าวผิว กับ ข้าวผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    คน ผ่าน คน
    คุณ ผ่าน น้อย!

    He said to you,
    'Go see John'.

3. มีผิว กับ มีผิว ลูกร
    ลูกร นั่น ลอน!
    The mother said
    to her child,
    'Sit down'.

3. มีผิว กับ มีผิว ลูกร
    ลูกร นั่น ลอน!
    The mother said
    to her child,
    'Sit down'.

4. ครูผิว กับ ครูผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    ครูผิว ผ่าน นักเรียน
    ครูผิว ผ่าน เท่าครู

    The teacher said
    to the student
    'Say after me'.

4. ครูผิว กับ ครูผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    ครูผิว ผ่าน นักเรียน
    ครูผิว ผ่าน เท่าครู

    The teacher said
    to the student
    'Say after me'.

5. ครูผิว กับ ครูผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    ครูผิว ผ่าน นักเรียน
    ครูผิว ผ่าน เท่าครู

    The teacher said
    to the student
    'Say after me'.

5. ครูผิว กับ ครูผิว ผ่าน เข้าหน้า
    ครูผิว ผ่าน นักเรียน
    ครูผิว ผ่าน เท่าครู

    The teacher said
    to the student
    'Say after me'.

    Sawat said to
    Somsak 'Please
    send me that
    book'.
1) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

1. kháw böök hàj phôm böök khun  
   He told me to tell you.

2. kháw sàň hàj phôm böök khun  
   He ordered me to tell you.

3. kháw khôo hàj phôm böök khun  
   He requested me to tell you.

4. kháw anújaát hàj phôm böök khun  
   He allowed me to tell you.

J) **Transformation-Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Student 1 to Student 2)</td>
<td>(Teacher)</td>
<td>(Student 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. 'chuâj böök hàj</td>
<td>kháw böök hàj</td>
<td>kháw böök hàj phôm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun coon paj</td>
<td>khun tham araj</td>
<td>chuâj böök hàj khun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hàa phôm nòoj</td>
<td></td>
<td>coon paj hàa kháw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Please tell John to come to see me!'</td>
<td>What did he tell you to do?</td>
<td>He told me to tell John to go to see him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 'paj dźawníi'  
Go now.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháw sàň hàj tham araj</td>
<td>kháw sàň hàj phôm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pąj dźawníi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Go now.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What did he order you to do?</th>
<th>He ordered me to go now.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
3. 'karunaa athîbaaj kháw khôò hâj khun tham araj kháw khôò hâj phôm athîbaaj
nôoj, dâj máj khráp'

Please explain. What did he ask you to do?
He asked me to explain.

4. 'jyyn jûu thînîi, kháw sànj hâj khun tham araj kháw sànj hâj phôm jyyn jûu thînîi, máj hâj phôm paj nâj
jàa paj nâj'.

Stand here. What did he order you to do?
He ordered me to stand here, not to go anywhere.

5. 'khun khooj phôm duâj nakhráp'
kháw bôok hâj khun tham araj kháw bôok hâj phôm khooj kháw
Wait for me. What did he tell you to do?
He told me to wait for him.

6. 'karunaa phût chàacháa nôoj kháw khôò hâj khun tham araj kháw khôò hâj phôm phût chàacháa nôoj dâj máj khráp
Could you please speak slowly. What did he request you to do?
He asked me to speak slowly.

7. 'peòt nâñsîy dâj' kháw anujâat hâj khun tham araj kháw anujâat hâj phôm peòt nâñsîy
You can open your book. What did he permit you to do?
He permitted me to open the book.

8. 'paj dâj' kháw anujâat hâj khun tham araj kháw anujâat hâj phôm paj
You may go. What did he let you do?
He let me go.
k) Transformation Drill (Change pattern 1 to 2 or vice versa.)

Pattern 1

1. thaanráatchakaan sàn hâj phôm rian phaasâa thaj
   The government ordered me to study Thai.

2. khâw anújât hâj phôm bøk kòon weelaa
   He permitted me to leave before time.

3. khâw bøk hâj khun chuâj riâk thêksâi hâj khâw
   He told you to call a taxi for him.

4. khâw sàn hâj phôm khooj jùu thiîniî kòon
   He ordered me to wait here first.

5. khâw anújât hâj phôm rian phaasâa thaj (dâj)
   He permitted me to study Thai.

6. phanrajaa phôm khoôc hâj phôm paj sýy khoôn hâj khâw
   My wife asked me to go shopping for her.

Pattern 2

thaanráatchakaan hâj phôm rian phaasâathaj
The government had me study Thai.

khâw hâj phôm bøk kòon weelaa
He had me leave before time.

khâw hâj khun chuâj riâk thêksâi hâj khâw
He had you call a taxi for him.

khâw hâj phôm khooj jùu thiîniî kòon
He had me wait here first.

khâw hâj phôm rian phaasâa thaj (dâj)
He had me study Thai.

phanrajaa phôm hâj phôm paj sýy khoôn hâj khâw
My wife had me go shopping for her.
7. kháw sán hâtek Réi kháp rót cháacháa
   He ordered the taxi to drive slowly.

1) Transformation Drill (Change from direct to indirect statement.)

Pattern 1 (direct)

1. kháw bòok phôm wàa jàa
duu nángy
   He said to me, 'Don't look at your book.'

2. kháw sán phôm wàa jàa
bòok khraj
   He ordered me, 'Don't tell anybody.'

3. khruu bòok nákrien wàa jàa
phút phaasáa ankrít kan
   The teacher said to the students, 'Don't speak English.'

4. kháw khóc phôm wàa jàa
phút rýáníí
   He requested me, 'Don't talk about this subject.'

5. kháw bòok théksí Réi wàa jàa
kháp rót rew
   He said to the taxi (driver), 'Don't drive fast.'

Pattern 2 (indirect)

1. kháw bòok mãj hâtek Réi phôm
duu nángy
   He told me not to look at my book.

2. kháw sán mãj hâtek phôm
bòok khraj
   He ordered me not to tell anybody.

3. khruu bòok mãj hâtek nákrien
phút phaasáa ankrít kan
   The teacher told the students not to speak English.

4. kháw khóc mãj hâtek phôm
phút rýáníí
   He asked me not to talk about this matter.

5. kháw bòok mãj hâtek théksí Réi
kháp rót rew
   He told the taxi (driver) not to drive fast.
6. kháw bòɔ̀k phɔm wàa jàa
   sỳy khɔɔɔŋ ràannán
   He said to me, 'Don't shop in that shop.'

7. mɔɔ bòɔ̀k phɔm wàa jàa
   dỳym nàmkhloɔŋ
   The doctor said to me, 'Don't drink canal water.'

m) Transformation Drill

**Pattern 1**

1. kháw sàn mȁj hȁj phɔm
   bòɔ̀k khraj
   He ordered me not to tell anyone.

2. kháw mȁj anújåat hȁj phɔm
   paj rya
   He didn't permit me to go by boat.

3. khruu bòɔ̀k mȁj hȁj nàkriàn
   phùut phàasàa ankrìt kan
   The teacher told the students not to speak English.

**Pattern 2**

kháw bòɔ̀k mȁj hȁj phɔm
sỳy khɔɔɔŋ ràannán
He told me not to shop in that shop.

mɔɔ bòɔ̀k mȁj hȁj phɔm
dỳym nàmkhloɔŋ
The doctor told me not to drink canal water.
4. kháw khóc màj hàj phôm phült ryânníí
   He asked me not to talk about this matter.
kháw màj hàj phôm phült ryânníí
   He didn't let me talk about this matter.

5. kháw bû̀ok màj hàj phôm maa
   He told me not to come.
kháw màj hàj phôm maa
   He didn't let me come.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern
rót thêksìì hâa jâak
It's hard to find a taxi.

1. râan nân
daàn nân hâa jâak
It's hard to find that shop.

2. bân kháw
bân kháw hâa jâak
It's hard to find his house.

3. nànsìì yì̀m nìì
nànsìì yì̀m nìì hâa jâak
It's hard to find this book.

4. khoncháj dîìdîì
khoncháj dîìdîì hàa jàak
It's hard to find good servants.

5. bân dîìdîì
bân dîìdîì hàa jàak
It's hard to find good houses.

6. nàkrìàn kë̀nkë̀n jànnìì
nàkrìàn kë̀nkë̀n jànnìì hàa jàak
Smart students like this are hard to find.
THAI BASIC COURSE

o) **Response Drill**  (Respond negatively to the question.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. jåak māj</td>
<td>māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hāa jåak māj</td>
<td>hāa māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. tham jåak māj</td>
<td>tham māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khīan jåak māj</td>
<td>khīan māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. òok sīaŋ jåak māj</td>
<td>òok sīaŋ māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. àan jåak māj</td>
<td>àan māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. khāwcaj jåak māj</td>
<td>khāwcaj māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. duu jåak māj</td>
<td>duu māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. phōp jåak māj</td>
<td>phōp māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. dāj jåak māj</td>
<td>dāj māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. chāj jåak māj</td>
<td>chāj māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. khāp jåak māj</td>
<td>khāp māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. rian jåak māj</td>
<td>rian māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. fān jåak māj</td>
<td>fān māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. khāaj jåak māj</td>
<td>khāaj māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. khīt jåak māj</td>
<td>khīt māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. thāam jåak māj</td>
<td>thāam māj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. thaan jåak māj</td>
<td>thaan māaj jåak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. cam jåak māj</td>
<td>cam māj jåak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

p) **Substitution Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khambhāam khōn</td>
<td>khambhāam khōn khāw tōop māj jåak {əhā khāw, tōop tōok jåak māj}</td>
<td>rook khrāp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Is his question hard to answer? No, it isn't.
2. บ้านขุน, ห้า บ้านขุนห้าจ้ากมัจ ห้ามัจจ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is your house hard to find?  No, it isn't.

3. จ้านิ้, ท้าน จ้านิ้ท้านจ้ากมัจ ท้านมัจจ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is this medicine hard to take?  No, it isn't.

4. อาฮานท่จ, อาฮานท่จท่千米 ท่千米จ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is it hard to make Thai food?  No, it isn't.

5. ก้ามท่จ, ก้ามท่จส่ก่อด ส่ก่อดมัจจ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is it hard to drive this car?  No, it isn't.

6. ร่ ott ก้ามนิิ์, ก้ามนิิ์นิ้千米 นิ้千米มัจจ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is it hard to drive this car?  No, it isn't.

7. ปรัตูญบาน ก้ามท่จปรัตูญบานิ์ niet นิ์ไม่千米จ้ากย่าห้า 
   Is this door hard to shut?  No, it isn't.

8. ทหารผู้ทั่ง ก้ามท่จทหารผู้ทั่ง พหัสบส่แรกริล, แรกริล千米จ้ากมัจ 
   Is his English hard to understand?  No, it isn't.

460
9. tua nánsýy thaj, tua nánsýy thaj khyan khyan màj jàak ehä jàak màj
   Is it hard to write Thai letters? No, it isn't.
10. phûujîn thaj, phûujîn thaj rúucàk rúucàk màj jàak ehä jàak màj
    Is it hard to get to know Thai women? No, it isn't.
11. nánsýy lèm nîi, nánsýy lèm nîi àan àan màj jàak ehä àan jàak màj
    Is it hard to read this book? No, it isn't.
12. naamsakun naamsakun khonthaj cam màj jàak ehä khonthaj, cam cam jàak màj
    Are Thai names hard to remember? No, they aren't.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. weelaa nákrian phûut phît,</td>
<td>weelaa nákrian phûut phît,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khruu khuan ca tham jaŋŋaj</td>
<td>khruu khuan ca kês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When a student speaks</td>
<td>When a student speaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incorrectly, what</td>
<td>incorrectly, the teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should the teacher do?</td>
<td>should correct (him).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. weelaa khun màj khâwcaj,</td>
<td>weelaa phôm màj khâwcaj,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khun thâam khraj</td>
<td>phôm thâam khruu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you don't understand,</td>
<td>When I don't understand,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what do you do?</td>
<td>I ask the teacher.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. **weelaa** khun phóp khonthaj, 
kakháw  
When you meet a Thai, 
what language do you 
speak to him?  
**weelaa** phóm phóp khonthaj, 
kakháw  
When I meet a Thai, 
I speak Thai to him.

4. **weelaa** khun mâj sabaaj, 
khun paj hₕₐₜ khraj  
When you are not well, 
whom do you go to see?  
**weelaa** phóm mâj sabaaj, 
Paj hₕₐₜ mₕₜ  
When I'm not well, I 
go to the doctor's.

5. **weelaa** khun jùt phák, 
khu màng bₐ̀ₜₑₚₐ  
When you take a break, 
what do you do?  
**weelaa** phóm jùt phák, 
phₜₜₜ k₞ₜₜₜ phₜₜₜ  
When I take a break, 
I talk to friends.

6. **weelaa** khun tòop khruu, 
khu khît pen phaasₐa 
araj  
When you answer the 
teacher, what language 
do you think in?  
**weelaa** phóm tòop khruu, 
phₜₜₜ mₕₜ ca khît pen 
phaasₐa âₜₕₜₜ k̂oₜₜ  
When I answer the 
teacher, I usually 
think first in English.

r) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hₜₜₜ mₕₜ</td>
<td><strong>weelaa</strong> khun mâj sabaaj,</td>
<td><strong>weelaa</strong> phóm mâj sabaaj,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khun tham jannaj</td>
<td>phóm mₕₜ ca paₙₕₜ hₜₜₜ mₕₜ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you are not</td>
<td>When I'm not well,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>well, what do you</td>
<td>I usually go to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do?</td>
<td>the doctor's.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. mâj  weelaa kháw phûut rew weelaa kháw phûut rew
rew khun khâwcaj mâj rew, phûm mâj khâwcaj
When he speaks When he speaks
fast, do you fast, I don't
understand. understand.

3. àan nânsyû weelaa khun wâan, weelaa phûm wâan,
khun tham araj phûm àan nânsyû
When you are free, When I'm not
what do you do? busy, I read.

4. duu nânsyû weelaa khun ca sòop, weelaa phûm ca sòop
khun khuan tham araj phûm khuan duu nânsyû
When you are going When I'm going to
to have a test, have a test, I
what would you do? should study.

5. ângkît weelaa khun tòop khruu, weelaa phûm tòop khruu,
khun khît pen phaasâa phûm khît pen phaasâa
araj ângkît ankrît
When you answer When I answer the
the teacher, what teacher, I think
language do you in English.
think in?

6. kê çe weelaa khun phûut phît, weelaa phûm phûut phît,
khuu khuan ca tham khruu khuan ca kê çe
jaññaj jaññaj
When you speak When I speak
incorrectly, incorrectly,
what should the the teacher
teacher do? should correct me.
7. ทำมขรุ๊  เวลาห้าเย็น แม่เข้าค่าย, เวลาห้าเย็น แม่เข้าค่าย,  
    แม่ทรมานจันทร์ แม่ทรมานจันทร์  
    When you don't understand, what do you do?  
    When I don't understand, I ask the teacher.

8. ป้าท้าน  เวลาห้าเย็น ผู้หัก ผู้หัก  
    แม่ทรมานอาเรา แม่ทรมานอาเรา  
    When you take a break, what do you do?  
    When I take a break I go drink coffee.

9. ป้าตาจ  เวลาห้าเย็น ผู้ตาจ ผู้ตาจ  
    แม่เฝ้าไรัน แม่เฝ้าไรัน  
    ผู้ตาจ ผู้ตาจ  
    When the weather's hot, where do most Americans like to go on vacations?  
    When the weather's hot, most Americans like to go to the seashore.

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

**Question**

1. **ต้นที่** แม่ปนเด็ก, แม่ปนเด็ก  
   แม่น่าน้อยที่น้ำใจ  
   When you were a child, where did you go to school?  
   When I was a child, I studied in the provinces (outside Bangkok).
2. *toon thī* khāw maa hāa khun, khun paj nāj
   When he came to see you, where were you gone?

3. *toon thī* khun jùu thīi
   prathāet wīatnaam, khun mīi tamnēŋ araj
   When you were stationed in Vietnam, what was your position (rank)?

4. *toon thī* khun rēm rian
   phaasāa thaj māj māj, khun khīt wāa phaasāa thaj jāak māj
   When you had just begun to study Thai, did you think it was hard?

5. *toon thī* khun jāŋ jùu thīi
   ameerikaa, khun rúucāk khāw lēew rýjan
   Did you meet him while you were in America?

6. *toon thī* khun jāŋ jùu thīi
   ameerikaa, khun rian phaasāa thaj thīināj
   When you were in America, where did you study Thai.

---

465
t) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. raw rian jùu</td>
<td>khun rúucàk kháw</td>
<td>phôm rúucàk kháw toon thîi raw rian jùu thîi woochîntân</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thîi woochîntân</td>
<td>mîyaraj</td>
<td>I knew him when we were studying in Washington.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When were you acquainted with him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun bôk paj</td>
<td>kháw maa mîyaraj</td>
<td>kháw maa toon thîi bôk paj khâan nôok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâan nôok</td>
<td></td>
<td>He came as you were leaving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When did he come?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. tènnaan</td>
<td>khun dâj khônkhwân</td>
<td>phôm dâj khônkhwân</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lâaj jàan mîyaraj</td>
<td>lâaj jàan toon thîi phôm tènnaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I got a lot of presents when I married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When did you get a lot of gifts?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. raw mâm jùu</td>
<td>mîi khon maa hâa mîyaraj</td>
<td>mîi khon maa hâa toon thîi raw mâm jùu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>People came to see us while we were not in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When did people come to see (us)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phîn phôm</td>
<td>toon thîi khun mâm</td>
<td>phîn phôm tham aahân</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sabaaj, khraj tham</td>
<td>hâj toon thîi phôm mâj sabaaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aahân hâj khun</td>
<td>Who cooked for you while you were sick?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>My friend cooked for me while I was sick.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

466
6. ที่ี่ ล็อบุรีภ์ ทองสักขาราม ล็อก ภógมจุุ่ยที่ี่ ล็อบุรีภ์
    เพขะนที่ี่ 2, ขุน
    จุุ่ยที่ี่ิน้ใจ

    Where were you living during World War II?

I was living in Lopburi during World War II.

u) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. ทองที่ี่ภógมเรียนพ้าษ้าท้าญจุุ่ยที่ี่อีฟ–อีส–อี,
    เวลาภógมฟูตฟลิต, ขุนท้าญมากแค่เขะหัจ

    When I was studying Thai at the FSI, when (ever) I made a mistake, a Thai usually corrected it.

2. ทองที่ี่ราวจานแเมอริก้า, เวลาพานราญ้า
    ปากสั้ยอาฮ’an, ภógมปากชูอาญพานราญ้าโสมี

    When we were still living in America, when (ever) my wife went to buy food, I always helped her.

3. ทองที่ี่ราวจุุ่ยน้ใจแเมอริก้า, เวลาพานราญ้า
    ภógมมajaxวาน’, ภógมชูอาญถ่มอาฮ’anชาอาห์จั่จ่ะก้หัจ

    When we were living in America, when (ever) my wife was busy, I made breakfast for her.

4. ทองที่ี่ภógมท้าญฟ้าแรมก้าวสูญรีก้าร่าญัญ ปฏิทีท์ท์มajaxมajax
    เวลาพ้าชีเอ้้นภógมปากจานลิญ’, ภógมปากโสมี

    When I had just begun working at the Foreign Ministry, when (ever) they invited me to a party, I always went.
v) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

1. kháw māj dâj pāj khondiaw khrāopkhrua khōŋkháw paj duāj  
   He didn't go alone. His family went too.

2. wannī phōm ca paj thúrá thī thanaakhaan lē ca paj hāa phīan thūn ēn duāj  
   Today I'm going to the bank on business and I will see a friend there also.

3. kháw pen khon suŋj lē dī duāj  
   She is a beautiful person and good too.

4. phōm māj dâj rian phūut thāwnān tē rian ān lē khēan duāj  
   I didn't just learn to speak but to read and write also.

5. kháw hâj thēksīf paiŋ sōŋ lē hâj khooj kháw duāj  
   He had the taxi pick him up and had it wait for him too.

6. kháw pen khāarāatchakaan lē nākkaanmyān duāj  
   He's a government employee and a politician too.
27.3 EXERCISES

a) Student A asks Student B to call a taxi for him. They discuss destination, where he will stop on the way, how long the driver will have to wait, what the cost will be, and whether the cost is too high or not. When Student B points out that it will be hard to get a taxi at that particular time, Student A says he will call one himself.

NOTE: Use the Basic Dialog as a guide only.

b) Student A asks Student B whether he does any of the following things for himself or whether he has someone do them for him; and if so, who does them for him.

1. drive a car
2. go shopping
3. bargain
4. buy food or other things
5. call taxis
6. make telephone calls
7. other activities

c) Student A asks Student B what he told (ask, let, ordered, requested, wanted) someone to do and if he did it. Use the following exchange as a model:

A: khun bòok (khọ, anújāat, sàną) hâj kháw (phỳân khun, etc.) tham araj

B: phọm bòok (khọ, etc.) hâj kháw khoọj jùu th̀fìnìi (thaan jaa, thoo maa hả khun, etc.)

A: (kháw) khoọj (thaan, etc.) rýplàaw khráp

B: plàaw khráp or khráp
27.4 VOCABULARY

anujâat permit
... (hâj)
athíbaaj explain
eeŋ by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence.
òok siâŋ to pronounce, to voice
baan classifier for door
chán I, me. Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.
chab áp classifier for letter or newspaper
duâj too, also
hâj for the benefit or in place of someone else
jût to stop
jût phák to take a break
kês to correct
kœn paj excessively
khâadoojsaan fare
khamthhâm (khô) question
khít to figure or reckon, to think
khôn khâprôt chauffeur, driver
khô to request
lôok world
mâj khôj (ca) hardly, rather
mâk ca usually, likely to
nákkaanmyaŋ (khon) a politician
phák phôn to rest

470
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phsan</td>
<td>to be expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phit</td>
<td>to be incorrect, a mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raakhaa</td>
<td>price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakot</td>
<td>to spell (words)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sans (haj)</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sankhraam</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sop</td>
<td>to test, be tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taam</td>
<td>to follow, after, along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tammee</td>
<td>position (rank)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too (raakhaa)</td>
<td>to bargain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too (thoorasap)</td>
<td>to make a phone call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

28.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation With a Taxi Driver

David: theksîì. Taxi!
khon khàp theksîì: paj nàj khràp Where to?
(Taxi driver)

David: paj pratunâm, aw thâwràj How much to Pratnam?
khon khàp: slîp sóon bàat khràp Twelve baht.

David: cèt bàat, dâj máj How about seven?
klâj khêsnîì eeŋ It's right near here.
khon khàp: màj wàj rôkhráp Can't do it.
thêswnâñ rôt tît The traffic's heavy over there.

David: nán, pèst bàat, paj máj Then, can you do it for eight?
kheēj paj dâj pèst màj I've been for eight bàat (before).
khon khàp: kâaw bàat kôlêswkân, Let's say nine baht.
paj máj Do you want to go?

David: paj kô paj If we're going, let's go.
chûaj khàp châa châa Please drive slowly.
nôcîj nakhráp
(The taxi goes very fast, so David says, '....!')

David: khun khráp, jàa kháp
rew nák sikhráp
karunaa kháp cháá
cháá nòoj, dâj mák
khráp

28.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) In affirmative requests stative verbs (dii, cháá, etc.) usually occur in reduplicated form when used as modifiers of other verbs.

phùut cháá cháá nòoj nakhráp 'Speak a little slower.'

nòoj 'a little' usually occurs after the stative verb and serves to soften the request.

In negative requests the stative verb is not usually reduplicated.

jàa phùut rew nák nakhráp 'Don't speak so fast.'

nák 'so, so much' may occur after the stative verb.

b) In the construction jùu klâj klâj khès nìi een, een is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance.

c) rook is also pronounced ròk, ròok, rôk, ro, when followed by khráp or khâ or ə when followed by há. It is used with statements of negation, or contradiction, or when correcting a misapprehension. It makes a statement milder or less abrupt.

mâj wày ròkhráp 'I can't do it.'
THAI BASIC COURSE

d)  naï or na with khráp at the end of a sentence indicates that a comment is being made and attention is being called to it. No response to it is necessary, but if one is made, it is khráp.

A: khòokkhun mâak naï 'Thanks very much.'
B: khráp (I heard you.)

Request = khàp diidii 
\{ naï  'Drive well.' \n\{ nakhráp

e) Notice the difference in usage between sī, sî, and sî. sī is used to request someone to do something. If it is to be done for the speaker, nòj or thii may be used to soften the request.

khàp cháacháa nòj sī (or sikhráp) 'Slow down a bit.'

If the speaker is urging someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request, or urging someone to do something that obviously needs doing, he may use sî.

khàp cháacháa (nòj) sî 'Slow down (as I asked you to)'

f) kô lésw kan is a phrase which is used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it. English equivalents vary from example to example:

kâaw bàat kô lésw kan 'Let's say nine baht.'
wàannīi khun khàprot kô 'How about you driving today?'
lésw kan
28.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paj pratuunám, aw thâwrâj</td>
<td>How much to Pratunam?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slijësk râatprasôn</td>
<td>paj slijësk râatprasôn, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to Ratprasong Corner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roonnân khîn</td>
<td>paj roonnân khîn, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to King's Cinema?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phiëks</td>
<td>paj phiëks, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to the P. X.?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thammasàat</td>
<td>paj thammasàat, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to Thammasart (University)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juusít, thanôn sâathoon tâj</td>
<td>paj juusít thanôn sâathoon tâj, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to USIS on South Sathorn?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roonphajaabaan</td>
<td>paj roonphajaabaan mítchân, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mítchân</td>
<td>How much to the Mission Hospital?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roonresm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaj</td>
<td>paj roonresm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaj, aw thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much to Patoomwan Corner?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

475
9. thanôn sukhumwit tron klâjklâj
   sooj jîisîp hâa, aw thâwrâj
   How much to Sukhumwit Street, right near Lane 25?

10. thanôn râatdamnoen tron anúsêawarii prachaathîppataj
    How much to Rachadamnoen Street right at the Freedom Monument?

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khâp châacháa nöoj nakhrâp
   Drive a little slower.

2. maa châawchâaw nöoj nakhrâp
   Come a bit earlier.

3. phûut dañdan nöoj nakhrâp
   Speak a bit louder.

4. paj rewrew nöoj nakhrâp
   Go a little faster.

5. klâp maa rewrew nöoj nakhrâp
   Come back a bit sooner.

6. duu nânsêy måakmâak nöoj nakhrâp
   Study a little bit more.

7. thaan måak måak nöoj nakhrâp
   Eat a little more.
THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Sentence Construction Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phûut, cháá</td>
<td>phûut cháacháa nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speak a little slower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khàp, cháá</td>
<td>khàp cháacháa nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drive a little slower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. klàp maa, rew</td>
<td>klàp maa rew rew nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Come back a little sooner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. thaan, mâak</td>
<td>thaan mâak mâak nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eat a little more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. jùu, naan</td>
<td>jùu naannaan nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stay a while longer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. tham (aahǎan), mâak</td>
<td>tham mâak mâak nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do a bit more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. phûut, daŋ</td>
<td>phûut daŋ daŋ nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speak a little louder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. phûut kàp kháw, dii</td>
<td>phûut kàp kháw dii dii nòoj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speak a little better with him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. จ้า ขับ รถ นัก นักหาญ
   Don't drive so fast.

2. จ้า พูด รถ นัก นักหาญ
   Don't speak so fast.

3. จ้า พูด ฆ่า นัก นักหาญ
   Don't speak so softly.

4. จ้า เดิน ข้าม นัก นักหาญ
   Don't walk so slowly.

5. จ้า มา มา ข้าม นัก นักหาญ
   Don't come so late.

6. จ้า มา มา ฆ่า นัก นักหาญ
   Don't come so late (in the morning).

7. จ้า มา มา ฆ่า นัก นักหาญ
   Don't be gone for so long.

e) Transformation Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ข้าม ช้า ข้าม น้อย นักหาญ</td>
<td>จ้า ขับ รถ นัก นักหาญ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive a little slower.</td>
<td>Don't drive so fast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. มา ข้าม ช้า ข้าม น้อย นักหาญ</td>
<td>จ้า มา มา ฆ่า นัก นักหาญ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come a little earlier.</td>
<td>Don't come so late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. paj re Rew Rew nüoj nakhráp
   Go a little faster.
   Jàā paj cháa nák nakhráp
   Don't go so slow.

4. phûut khōj khōj nüoj nakhráp
   Speak a little softer.
   Jàā phûut daŋ nák nakhráp
   Don't speak so loud.

5. klàp re Rew Rew nüoj nakhráp
   Come back a little sooner.
   Jàā klàp cháa nák nakhráp
   Don't come back so late.

6. maa cháaw cháaw nüoj nakhráp
   Come a little earlier.
   Jàā maa sāaj nák nakhráp
   Don't come so late.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sūaj caŋ́
   ná
   {nahá
   Very pretty, isn't it?

2. sūaj
   ná
   {nahá
   Pretty, isn't it?

3. këŋ caŋ́
   ná
   {nahá
   Very expert, isn't it?

4. dìí
   ná
   {nahá
   Good, isn't it?

5. chá́t caŋ́
   ná
   {nahá
   Very clear (distinct), isn't it?

6. phsëŋ
   ná
   {nahá
   Expensive, isn't it?
7. naan caŋ ᵇ nó
   ᵇ nahá  A very long time, isn't it?

8. cháa caŋ ᵇ nó
   ᵇ nahá  Very slow, isn't it?

9. rew caŋ ᵇ nó
   ᵇ nakhráp  Very fast (quick), isn't it?

10. klaj caŋ ᵇ nó
    ᵇ nahá  Very far, isn't it?

11. māak ᵇ nó
    ᵇ nahá  (It's) a lot, isn't it?

12. māak caŋ nó
    nahá  (It's) a very great deal, isn't it?

g) Transformation Drill

From the situation given in Column 1, one student makes a comment (as a reaction to the situation) to another student.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. faraŋ khonnán phùut phaaSāa thaj chát māak</td>
<td>faraŋ khonnán phùut phaaSāa thaj chát caŋ nó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly.</td>
<td>That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly, doesn't he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. kháw pen khon nāabya
   He's a bore.
   kháw pen khon nāabya nó
   He's a bore, isn't he?
3.  phúujīŋ khonnī́ sūaj màak
   That woman is very pretty.
phúujīŋ khonnī́ sūaj can ná
   That woman is very pretty, isn't she?

4.  phaaśāa thaj nī̀ jāak
   Thai is hard.
phaaśāa thaj nī̀ jāak ná
   Thai is hard, isn't it?

5.  phyān khun pen khon sanùk
   Your friend is an amusing person.
phyān khun pen khon sanùk ná
   Your friend is an amusing person, isn't he?

6.  phūuchaaj khonnán lèn thennī́t kēŋ màak
   That fellow plays tennis very well.
phūuchaaj khonnán lèn thennī́t kēŋ can ná
   That fellow plays tennis very well, doesn't he?

7.  mōo khonnán dī̀ màak
   That doctor is very good.
mōo khonnán dī̀ can ná
   That doctor is very good, isn't he?

8.  bāan khun praphāat jùù klaj màak
   Mr. Prapas' house is very far.
bāan khun praphāat jùù klaj can
   Mr. Prapas' house is very far, isn't it?

9.  wannī́ aakàat dī̀
   Today the weather's fine.
wannī́ aakàat dī̀ ná
   Today the weather's fine, isn't it?

10. thīinī́ khōoŋ phēsn màak
    Here things are very expensive.
thīinī́ khōoŋ phēsn can ná
    Here things are very expensive, aren't they?
11. thĕwníi rót tît mâak  thĕwníi rót tît can ná

The traffic is very heavy in this section. The traffic is very heavy in this section, isn't it?

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khàp cháacháa nòoij sîkkhráp
   Slow down a bit.

2. maa cháachâaw nòoij sîkkhráp
   Come a little earlier.

3. phûut dàndàn nòoij sîkkhráp
   Speak a little louder.

4. paj rewrew nòoij sîkkhráp
   Go a little faster.

5. duu nánṣyìy máakmâak nòoij sîkkhráp
   Study a little more.

1) Transformation Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Request</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(khun khàp rót rew)</td>
<td>khàp cháacháa nòoij sîkkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drive a little slower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(khun maa sàaj thûkwàn)</td>
<td>maa cháawcháaw nòoij sîkkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Come a bit earlier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(khun phûut khʒi mâak)</td>
<td>phûut dàndàn nòoij sîkkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speak a little louder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(khun paj cháa mâak)  
paj rewrew nôoj sikhráp  
   Go a little earlier.

(khun thamŋaan cháa)  
tham rewrew nôoj sikhráp  
   Work a little faster.

(khun thaan nôoj)  
thaan mâak mâak nôoj sikhráp  
   Eat a little more.

(khun phûut mâj dîi)  
phûut dîi dîi nôoj sikhráp  
   Speak a little better.

j) Transformation Drill

Affirmative Request  
  Negative Request
1. khâp cháachâa nôoj sikhráp  
   Drive slower.  
   jàa khâp rew nák sikhráp  
   Don’t drive so fast.
2. maa cháawchâaw nôoj sikhráp  
   Come earlier.  
   jàa maa sâaj nák sikhráp  
   Don’t come so late.
3. paj rewrew nôoj sikhráp  
   Go sooner.  
   jàa paj cháa nák sikhráp  
   Don’t go so late.
4. khuj kan khôj khôj nôoj sikhráp  
   Converse more quietly.  
   jàa khuj kan dan nák sikhráp  
   Don’t converse in such loud voices.
5. thamŋaan rewrew nôoj sikhráp  
   Work faster.  
   jàa tham cháa nák sikhráp  
   Don’t work so slowly.
k) **Transformation Drill**

Change Pattern 1 to 2 with *na*, which has the meaning 'a reminder to...'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with *si*, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. paj     | paj nakhra
           | paj sikhrap |
| 2. maa     | maa nakhra
           | maa sikhrap |
| 3. phuut   | phuut nakhra
           | phuut sikhrap |
| 4. toop    | toop nakhra
           | toop sikhrap |
| 5. paj rewrew | paj rewrew nakhra
         | paj rewrew sikhrap |
| 6. phuut phaasathaj | phuut phaasathaj
          | sikhrap |
| 7. jaa phuut phaasaa ankrit | jaa phuut phaasaa
            | ankrit sikhrap |

28.3 **EXERCISES** (The instructor reads the sentences describing the situation and a student makes an appropriate response.)

1. khun kamlan ca khyn thksfi. khun møj jaaak haj thksfi k appréci rot rew. khun phuut waa '.....'.

2. khun kamlan nang thksfi. khonkhapr khip rew mack. khun møj jaaak haj khaw khip rew. khun phuut waa '.....'.

3. nákrian phuut sian khj keen paj. khun jaaak haj khaw phuut dandaj. khun phuut waa '.....'.
4. phrunii khun ca paj thiwaw kâp phyân têe chaaw. khâw ca têo maa hôp khun thîi bân. khun jàak hâj khâw maa chaaw chaaw. khun phûut wâa '......'!

5. khun cim chuan phyân khouj samse. khun mäß jàak hâj khun cim chuan phyân khouj. khun phûut wâa '......'!

6. khun coo hên phûujîn khon nîn. khâw suaj màak. khun coo phûut kâp phyân wâa '......'!

7. khun coon khît wâa wannîi aakât dîi màak. khun coon phûut kâp phyân wâa '......'!

8. khrûu jàak hâj nákriân phûut phaasâa thaj. khrûu phûut wâa '......'!

9. nákriân kamlân phûut phaasâa ânkrît kan. khrûu jàak hâj khâw phûut phaasâa thaj kan. khrûu phûut wâa '......'!

28.4 VOCABULARY

anúsâawarii (hêñ) monument

eñ is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance (in this lesson).

coo Joe

dañ loud

khês níi up to (such and such a point) that

{nán near (far), to that extent

khéppitân Capitol, name of a hotel in Bangkok

khêsJ softly, low (of sound)
kē léew kan  used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.

mâj wâj  can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)

mîtchân  Mission, name of a hospital in Bangkok

nâk  so, so much

pathumwan  a section in Bangkok

prachaathíppataj  freedom and also the name of a monument in Bangkok

rooñnąñ khîŋ  King's Cinema

rōt tît  the traffic's heavy

tît  to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)

saphaan khwaaj  Buffalo Bridge, name of the section in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road

sî, sî, sî  to request someone to do something to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing

thěswnán  over there, that area

thii  may be used in the place of nòoj to soften the request if it is to be done for the speaker.
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-NINE

29.0 BASIC DIALOG: paj ʰaː araŋ thaan khānŋɔok
  'Going Out to Eat.'

A: phóm ca paj ʰaː araŋ thaan khānŋɔok . paj dūajkan màj
  I'm going to go out for something to eat. Want to go along?

B: paj
  khun chuan khraj paj dūaj rýplàaw
  Yes.

A: màj dâj chuan khraj phró
  màj mì khraj jùu
  No, I didn't invite anybody because nobody was in.

B: khun sɔmslì là
  How about Somsri?

A: màj maa
  pùaj
  She didn't come.
  She's sick.

B: ʔán, thaan sèt lèsəw
  thâa raw mìi weelaa phəə
  Then, after we have eaten, if we have time,
  paj jiam khâw sàk nòoŋ
  let's go visit her for a while,

A: dìi màj
  O.K.?

B: awsì khráp
  ʔán, raw rììp paj kan thè
  Good idea
  dìəaw ca klàp maa màj than
  Then let's hurry or we won't get back on time.
29.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND OTHER NOTES

a) **aw māj** means 'Will you accept?' or 'Is it acceptable?'
   It is often used after sentences in which a proposal is made. The response to it is **māj aw khrāp** 'I won't (accept it)' or 'It isn't (acceptable)', or **awsī khrāp 0.K.' or 'I'll accept (it)'. **aw māj** is similar in usage and meaning to **māj** in this particular sense.

b) As indicated in 11.16, **khrāj** and **araį** are not always used as question words. They may also be used as **indefinite pronouns**:

   (1) in questions with **māj, rīy, or rīplāaw, or**

   (2) as the object complement of certain verbs in affirmative and negative sentences, as below:

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   \text{mī khrāj maa bāañ māj} & \quad \text{'Is anyone coming.'} \\
   \text{māj mī khrāj maa} & \quad \text{'Nobody's coming.'} \\
   \text{khrāj khrāj kē bōok wāa kruñṭēpp māj sūaį} & \quad \text{'Everybody says Bangkok's not pretty.'}
   \end{align*}
   \]

   Although both **khrāj** and **khon** occur with indefinite meaning as object complements of the verb **mī**, they cannot be used interchangeably. The difference in usage is illustrated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Utterance</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Mr. A had a house for sale, so he put an ad in the paper with</td>
<td>A to his secretary:</td>
<td>Did I get any calls (about that ad)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his telephone number.</td>
<td><strong>mī khon thoo maa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bāañ rīplāaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mr. A is expecting a call from some friends about a trip to Pataya.</td>
<td>A to his wife:</td>
<td>Did anyone (of my friends) call?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>mī khrāj thoo maa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bāañ rīplāaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The usage in negative sentence is illustrated below:

1. There are several \( m\ddot{a}j \, m\ddot{i} \, \ddot{k}h\ddot{o}n \, j\ddot{u}u \) 'Nobody's living in those houses.'
on a street.

2. Some one knocks on \( m\ddot{a}j \, m\ddot{i} \, \ddot{k}h\ddot{r}a\ddot{j} \, j\ddot{u}u \) 'Nobody's home.'
a door but gets no
response.

29.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) \( s\ddot{e}t \), and \( t\ddot{h}a\ddot{n} \) are called completive verbs. They occur
in the structure SENTENCE + COMPLETIVE VERB.

1. \( s\ddot{e}t \) 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite
length and of temporary nature)'

\[ \text{kh\acute{a}w \, tham\acute{g}aan \, s\ddot{e}t \, l\acute{e}w} \] 'He has finished working.'

\[ \text{kh\acute{a}w \, j\ddot{a}n \, tham \, m\ddot{a}j \, s\ddot{e}t} \] 'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. \( t\ddot{h}a\ddot{n} \) means 'to accomplish something in time, to
have time to', or 'to catch up to.'

\[ \text{ph\ddot{o}m \, m\ddot{a}a\, roor\ddot{r}ri\ddot{a}n \, m\ddot{a}j \, t\ddot{h}a\ddot{n}} \] 'I didn't come to school on time'.

3. After action verbs (paj, than, etc.) the question
word \( m\ddot{a}j \) indicates that a voluntary choice is
possible, hence it is used in invitations, sug-
gestions, etc. (See 9.1)

\[ \text{raw \, paj \, s\acute{y} \, kh\ddot{h}\ddot{o}n.} \] 'We are going shopping.'

\[ \text{paj \, d\ddot{u}aj\ddot{k}a\ddot{n} \, m\ddot{a}j} \] 'Want to go along?'

Responses to questions of this type may be:

Affirmative: \( \text{paj \, sih\acute{a}} \) 'I would like to'

(ready acceptance)
Negative:  māj əhá  
khòopkhun  
'Thanks, no.'  
(polite refusal)

b)  rýplàaw is used with action verbs to indicate 'past time'.

paj  rýplàaw  
'Did you go?'

paj  khráp  
'I did.'

There are two possible negative responses to this type of question:  māj  dāj (paj)  and  māj (paj).  Choice of the māj dāj form of the negative indicates that circumstances prevented the speaker from doing something.  Choice of the māj form indicates that the speaker did not do something out of choice.  Observe the examples below:

mỳawaanní khun paj  naalán rýplàaw  
'Did you go to the party yesterday?'

phôm  māj  dāj  paj  khráp  (phró  phôm  māj  wâan)  
'I didn't go (because I was busy.)'

phôm  māj  paj  khráp  (phró  phôm  māj  jáak  paj).  
'I didn't go (because I didn't want to go.)'

c)  thè (tèh, thèt)  'why not, let's'  is a sentence particle.  It is used in making mild suggestions.  When joint activity is called for, it occurs after kan.

raw  paj  kin  khâaw  kan  thèkhráp  
'Let's go eat.'

d)  dỳaw  may occur as a sentence connective, with the meaning 'or else, otherwise.'  In the examples below it used to indicate that one event follows as the logical consequence of another.

raw  rìip  paj  kan  thèkhráp,  dỳaw  ca  klàp  maa  māj  than  
'Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't get back in time.'

jàa  cháá  nák  nakhráp,  dỳaw  naan  ca  māj  sèt  
'Don't be so slow, or else the work won't be finished.'

490
29.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(промыш) ฯา ฯา jáย ץำน, ฯา ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป</td>
<td>I'm going to get something to eat. Want to come along?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **ץำน ขำว** ฯา  pienią ץำน ขำว. ฯา ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป
   I'm going to eat. Want to come along?

2. **สีย ข้อง** ฯา  pienią สีย ข้อง. ฯำ ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป
   I'm going to eat. Want to come along? shopping?

3. **โง่ คำมำจ** ฯา  pienią โง่ คำมำจ. ฯำ ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป
   I'm going to mail a letter. Want to come along?

4. **ץำน คำฟ์** ฯา  pienią ץำน คำฟ์ ฯำ ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป
   I'm going to drink coffee. Want to come along.

5. **ดุ่น น้ำ** ฯา  pienią ดุ่น น้ำ ฯำ ดุำจกัน máจ ขรำป
   I'm going to a movie. Want to come along?
b) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Reluctant acceptance)</td>
<td>(Willing acceptance)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. ca paj haa araj thana</td>
<td>maj ehá</td>
<td>paj kó pøj</td>
<td>paj sihá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. paj duajkan máj</td>
<td>khooopkhun</td>
<td>paj kó pøj</td>
<td>paj sihá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. paj thana kaafse kan</td>
<td>máj ehá</td>
<td>paj kó pøj</td>
<td>paj sihá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máj</td>
<td>khooopkhun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. paj máj</td>
<td>máj ehá</td>
<td>paj kó pøj</td>
<td>paj sihá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khooopkhun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>thana máj</td>
<td>khooopkhun { khráp { há? Do you want to eat? Yes, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>thana máj</td>
<td>máj ehá, khooopkhun Do you want to eat? No, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>dýym máj</td>
<td>khooopkhun há Do you want something to drink? Yes, thank you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. No. kaafes máj
    māj əhā, khōopkhun
    Do you want some coffee?
    No, thank you.

5. No. aw máj
    māj əhā, khōopkhun
    Would you like some?
    No, thank you.

6. Yes paj máj
    (reluctant) Would you like to go?
    paj kō paj
    Well, O.K.

7. Yes. duu máj
    khōopkhun há
    Do you want to look?
    Yes, thank you.

8. No. aàn máj
    māj əhā, khōopkhun
    Do you want to read (it)?
    No, thank you.

9. No. than dūajkan máj
    māj əhā, khōopkhun
    Would you like to eat together?
    No, thank you.

10. No. pāj dūajkan máj
    māj əhā, khōopkhun
    Do you want to go along?
    No, thank you.

d) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Yes. syy máj</td>
<td></td>
<td>syy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Want to buy it?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. No. syy máj</td>
<td></td>
<td>māj syy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Want to buy it?</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Yes  duu máj
   Want to look?  duu
   Yes.

4. No   aw máj
   Would you like some?  máj aw
   Will you accept my offer?  No.

5. No   maa máj
   Would you like to come?  máj maa
   No.

6. Yes  paj máj
   Would you like to go?  paj
   Yes.

7. Yes  khăaj máj
   (reluctant) Would you like to sell (it)?  khăaj kĕ khăaj
   Well, maybe.

8. No   rót khannií ca khăaj máj
   Will you sell this car?  máj khăaj
   No.

9. No   phrûngníí ca paj naan máj
   Are you going to the affair tomorrow?  máj paj
   No.

10. Yes kháw ca hâj khun paj
     tàançarwát, aw máj
     They want you to go to the provinces, are you going?  Yes.
## THAI BASIC COURSE

**e) Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question (Past action)</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Yes | than rýplàaw  
Did you eat? | than | Yes, I did. |
| 2. No | dỳym rýplàaw  
Did you have anything | mâj dâj dỳym | No, I didn't. |
| 3. No | paj rýplàaw  
Did you go? | mâj dâj paj | No, I didn't. |
| 4. Yes | sỳy rýplàaw  
Did you buy (it)? | sỳy | Yes, I did. |
| 5. No | khǎaj rýplàaw  
Did you sell (it)? | mâj dâj khǎaj | No, I didn't. |
| 6. No | duu rýplàaw  
Did you look (at it)? | mâj dâj duu | No, I didn't. |
| 7. Yes | àan rýplàaw  
Did you read (it)? | àan | Yes, I did. |
| 8. No | aw rýplàaw  
Did you take it? | mâj dâj aw | No, I didn't. |
f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. mÿawaanníi, kháw paj añañláñ rýplàaw khráp  
Did he go to the party yesterday? | kháw mâj paj khráp (phró kháw mâj jàak paj).  
He didn't go because he didn't want to. |
| 2. mÿawaanníi, khun paj añañláñ rýplàaw khráp  
Did you go to the party yesterday? | phôm mâj dâj paj khráp phró phôm mâj wàan  
I didn't go because I was busy. |
| 3. mÿakhyyynníi, phýan khun thana  
aahâñ thaj rýplàaw  
Did your friend eat Thai food last night? | kháw mâj thana khráp (phró kháw mâj chôop aahâñ thaj)  
He didn't because he doesn't like Thai food. |
| 4. mÿakhyyynníi, phýan khun thana  
aahâñ thaj rýplàaw  
Did your friend eat Thai food last night? | kháw mâj dâj thana khráp  
phró aahâñ môt  
He didn't because it was all eaten up. |
| 5. khun sýy náñsỳy rýplàaw khráp  
Did you buy the book? | phôm mâj dâj sýy khráp phró mâj mîi nen  
I didn't because I didn't have any money. |
| 6. khun sýy náñsỳy rýplàaw khráp  
Did you buy the book? | phôm khít wàa phôm ca mâj sýy khráp phró phôm mâj chôop náñsỳy lêm nîî  
I thought I wouldn't buy it because I didn't like this book. |
g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thýŋ weelaa phák lësw, phák thèkhráp
   It's break time. Take a break.

2. khâannaj mìi kâwîi, (raw) paj nâŋ thîinân kan thèkhráp
   There are chairs inside. Let's go sit there.

3. thîâñ lësw, paj thaan khâaw kan thèkhráp
   It's noon already. Let's go eat.

4. paj kan thèkhráp
   Let's go.

5. wannî raw phûut phaasâa thaj kan thèkhráp
   Today let's speak Thai.

6. kháw châa kéen paj. raw thaan kan thèkhráp
   He's too late. Let's go ahead and eat.

h) Transformation Drill (Reword the sentences using chuan.)

1. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phôm 'wansâwníi paj phátthajaa kan mág khráp!
   He said to me, 'Would you like to go to Pataya (with us) next Saturday?'

   Student: kháw chuan phôm paj phátthajaa.
   He invited me to go to Pataya.

2. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phôm 'wanníi raw phûut phaasâa thaj kan thè'
   He said to me, 'Let's speak Thai today.'
Student: kháw chuan phôm phùut phhaasää thaj
          He invited me to speak Thai (with him).

1. khun coon phùut kàp phôm 'jennīi raw paj hāa
   aahān thaj thaan kan mái khráp

2. phyan khun phùut kàp phôm 'phrūnńīi , paj lēn
   thennǐt kan mái khráp

3. mỳawaannīi phanrajaa phôm phùut kàp phôm 'paj duu
   nǎn kan thè (raw paj duu nǎn kan)

4. kháw phùut kàp phôm 'phrūnńīi kháw ca mii kaanbanjaaj
   ryan myanthaj . paj faŋ düajkan mái khráp'

5. kháw phùut kàp phôm wāa dỳym kaafes mái khráp

6. kháw phùut kàp phôm 'wannīi , thaan khâaw kàp phôm
   na khráp

7. kháw phùut kàp phôm 'phôm jàak hâj khun paj thamńaan
   kàp phôm

1) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phôm</td>
<td>phôm thamńaan sêt lēw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’ve finished working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw</td>
<td>raw thamńaan sêt lēw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We’ve finished working.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. rian náŋsûy raw rian náŋsûy sêt lèsìw
   We've finished studying.
4. thaan aahâan raw thaan aahâan sêt lèsìw
   We've finished eating.
5. tham kàp khâaw raw tham kàp khâaw sêt lèsìw
   We've finished cooking.
6. sòop raw sòop sêt lèsìw
   We've finished the test.
7. khîyân cótmãaj raw khîyân cótmãaj sêt lèsìw
   We've finished writing letters.
8. phôm phôm khîyân cótmãaj sêt lèsìw
   I've finished writing letters.
9. phûut phôm phûut sêt lèsìw
   I've finished talking.
10. thoorasâp phôm thoorasâp sêt lèsìw
    I've finished phoning.
11. faŋ wîthhajû phôm faŋ wîthhajû sêt lèsìw
    I've finished listening.
12. phûut kàp khâw phôm phûut kàp khâw sêt lèsìw
    I've finished talking to him.
13. sîy khôông phôm sîy khôông sêt lèsìw
    I've finished shopping.
14. son còt mâaj  

phôm son còt mâaj sêt lész

I've finished mailing the letter.

15. tham thúrá  

phôm tham thúrá sêt lész

I've finished my business.

j) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill** *(sêt as main verb.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. จ้าน ข้าญ กัณ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป</td>
<td>จ้าน ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป คิล ฮีร์ป</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your work finished?</td>
<td>My work is finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. จ้าน ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ กัณ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป</td>
<td>จ้าน ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your friend's work finished?</td>
<td>My friend's work isn't finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. รูป ข้าญ กัณ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป</td>
<td>รูป ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ สี่ แม่ ฮีร์ป</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your picture finished?</td>
<td>My picture is finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. บ้าน ข้าญ กัณ สี่ ลีซว รีจ่าน ฮีร์ป</td>
<td>บ้าน ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ สี่ ลีซว</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your house finished yet?</td>
<td>My house isn't finished yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. นิ่งซ้าย ข้าญ กัณ สี่ ลีซว รีจ่าน ฮีร์ป</td>
<td>นิ่งซ้าย ข้าญ ผ์ฮีร์มี่ สี่ ลีซว</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Transformation Drill

(Listen to the affirmative sentence and add a negative sentence with `tè kháw jaŋ mâj sêt`.)

**Pattern 1**

1. **phôm thamjaan sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished working.  
   **tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

2. **phôm thaan khâaw sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished eating  
   **tè kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

3. **phôm rian nâŋsûy sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished studying  
   **tè kháw jaŋ rian mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

4. **phôm phûut thoorasâp sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished telephoning  
   **tè kháw phûut mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

5. **phôm lêñ thennîs sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished playing tennis  
   **tè kháw jaŋ lêñ mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

6. **phôm sòop sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished my exams  
   **tè kháw jaŋ sòop mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

7. **phôm sîy khôn sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished shopping  
   **tè kháw jaŋ sîy mâj sêt**  
   but he hasn't yet.

8. **phôm tham thûrá sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished my business  
   **tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sêt**  
   but he isn't finished yet.

9. **phôm khîyân côtmâj sêt lêsû**  
   I've finished writing a letter  
   **tè kháw jaŋ khîyân mâj sêt**  
   but he isn't finished yet.
10.  phöm thaan kaafse sët lësw
    I’ve finished drinking coffee
tè kháw jān thaan mâj sët
    but he hasn’t yet.

11.  phöm tham aahān sët lësw
    I’ve finishing cooking
tè kháw jān tham mâj sët
    but she hasn’t yet.

1)  Expansion Drill

Example 1:
 phoo mâj     Is it enough?
 weelaa phoo mâj     Is the time sufficient?
 mii weelaa phoo mâj     Is there sufficient time?
 raw mii weelaa phoo mâj     Do we have enough time?

Example 2:
 phoo mâj     Is it enough?
 aahān phoo mâj     Is the food sufficient?
 mii aahān phoo mâj     Is there sufficient food?
 raw mii aahān phoo mâj     Do we have enough food?

Continue the drill by having the teacher provide cue words which the student incorporates in the sentences given:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Teacher</th>
<th>Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.  phoo mâj</td>
<td>phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khruu phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mii khruu phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>raw mii khruu phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.  phoo mâj</td>
<td>phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>náŋsŷy phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mii náŋsŷy phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khun mii náŋsŷy phoo mâj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. phoo máj
    nèn        nèn phoo máj
    mìi        mìi nèn phoo máj
    raw        raw mìi nèn phoo máj

4. phoo máj
    nèn dyan    nèn dyan phoo máj
    dâj        dâj nèn dyan phoo máj
    khun       khun dâj nèn dyan phoo máj

5. phoo máj
    aahān      aahān phoo máj
    tham       tham aahān phoo máj
    khâw       khâw tham aahān phoo máj

6. phoo máj
    weelaa     weelaa khun phoo máj
    hâj khun    hâj weelaa khun phoo máj
    khâw       khâw hâj weelaa khun phoo máj

m) **Expansion Drill**

*Example:* mâj phoo khráp  It's not sufficient.

T:  weelaa  time
S:  weelaa mâj phoo khráp  The time is not sufficient.

T:  mìi  there is
S:  mìi weelaa mâj phoo khráp  There isn't sufficient time.
THAI BASIC COURSE

T:  phóm  
S:  phóm mii weelaa màj phóc  
    khráp  
I  
I do not have sufficient time.

Continue by supplying the following sets of words and having the students make expansions like the one in the example above:

1. màj phóc ... khruu ... mii ... raw
2. màj phóc ... câwnâathīi ... mii ... raw
3. màj phóc ... nēn ... hàj phóm ... khāw

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Notice the difference in usage between jīam and hāa in the following drill.

1. khun sōmsii màj sabaaj . raw ca paj jīam khāw thīi roonphajaabaan
   Somsri is not well. We’ll go visit her at the hospital.

2. khun sōmsii màj sabaaj . khun sōmsii paj hāa mō thīi roonphajaabaan
   Somsri is not well. Somsri went to see the doctor at the hospital.

3. phóm mii thúrá kakhun pradīt . phóm ca paj hāa khun pradīt.
   I have business with Mr. Pradit. I’ll go see him.
4. .phôm màj dâj mìi thûrá kakhun pradlt. phôm jàak phôp lé khuj kâp khâw thûwnân. phôm ca paj jìam khâw jenníi.
   I don't have any business with Pradit. I just want to meet and talk to him. I'll go visit him this evening.

5. khrítsamàat pii níi, phôm ca phaa phanrajaa phôm paj jìam khun phôo khun mès thîi chîkhaakôo
   This Christmas I'm going to take my wife to visit my parents in Chicago.

6. khâw tɔŋkaan phôp khun coon, khun chûaj phaa khâw paj hâa khun coon nòoj, dâj màj khràp
   He wants to meet John. Please take him to see John.

7. A: mìi khon maa hâa khun khráp
   B: khâw mìi thûrá araj
   A: khâw màj mìi thûrá araj rokhráp
   khâw maa jìam khun
   There's someone to see you.
   What's his business?
   He's not here on business.
   He came to visit you.

o) **Expansion Drill** (than 'to be on time, to catch up with')

Example: 

Teacher 

Student 

than màj 

than màj 

maa than màj 

khun maa than màj

**English:** Were you in time? 
Come in time?
Did you come in time?
Continue the drill by having the students form sentences like those above using the following sets of cue words:

1. than mái khráp ... maa thamnaan ... khun ...
   mñaacháawníi
2. than mái khráp ... paj duu nãŋ ... khun ...
   mñaakhyynníi
3. than mái khráp ... kláp maa ... rian ... khun ...
   mñaabàajnníi

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. roongrían khâw weelaa sǎam mooŋ cháaw. phöm maa thỳŋ
   roongrían weelaa sǎam mooŋ khrỳŋ
   phöm maa roongrían mái than.
   School starts at 9:00.
   I came to school at 9:30
   I didn't come to school on time.

2. kaanprachum rèem weelaa bàaj sōŋ mooŋ tron. phöm
   paj thỳŋ thìiprachum weelaa bàaj sǎam mooŋ
   phöm paj prachum mái than
   The meeting began at 2 p.m. sharp.
   I got to the meeting at 3:00.
   I didn't get to the meeting on time.

3. thîithamnaan khâw weelaa (sōŋ mooŋ khrỳŋ cháaw
   \{pɛɛt
   phöm paj thỳŋ thîi thamnaan weelaa (sǎam mooŋ
   \{kâaw

506
phôm paj thamnąan māj than
The office opens at 8:30 a.m.
I got there at 9:00.
I didn't get to work on time.

4. raw thaan aahkhan klańwan sêt weelaa bàaj sôn moon kwaà. roonrian khâw weelaa bàaj sôn moon tron.
raw klàp maa rian māj than
We finished eating lunch after 2:00 a.m.
School starts at 2:00 p.m. sharp.
We didn't return to class on time.

5. weelaa sôn naathii. phôm tson khít khamtôop sâam naathii.
phôm khít (khamtôop) māj than
phôm tôop māj than
The time (provided) was 2 minutes.
It took me 3 minutes to think of an answer.
I didn't think of the answer in time. (or)
I didn't answer in time.

6. khâw phûut rew keen paj. phôm fan māj than
He speaks too fast.
I can't catch it.

7. phôm ca bôok khâw té khâw paj lééw. phôm bôok khâw māj than
I was going to tell him, but he had already gone.
I wasn't in time to tell him.
q) **Transformation Drill**

T: roonriam khaw weelaya s'am moo'n chaaw  
   School starts at 9:00 a.m.

phoom maa thyen roonriam weelaya s'am moo'n khryn  
   I got to school at 9:30 a.m.

gue words: maa roonriam get to school

S: khun maa roonriam māj than  
   You didn't get to school on time.

1. thi thamnaan khoen phoom khaw weelaya s'oen moo'n chaaw  
   mya chaaw ni phoom paj thyen thiithamnaan weelaya s'am  
   moo'n chaaw

gue words: mya chaaw ni, paj thamnaan

2. khaw reap phuut weelaya ng thum. phoom paj thyen  
   thinnan weelaya thum sislip haa

gue words: paj faang khaw phuut

3. khaw haj weelaya phoom toop s'oen naathii. phoom chaaj  
   weelaya tham s'am naathii

gue word: toop

4. phoom ca bok khaw te khaw paj leew

gue word: toop

5. rötmee bok çaak pają weelaya thian sîp naathii.  
   phoom paj thyen pają rötmee weelaya thian sîp haa naathii

gue words: paj khyn rötmee.
6. ผ่อม ปาย ร้าป ขาว เวลาด้วย สร้อย ที่มุม. ขาวดอก ดอก ข้าม ถนน เวลาด้วย น้อย ที่มุม
    Cue words: ปาย ร้าป ขาว

7. แคนข้าม จกฤษฎีปาย ถิ่น เวลาด้วย ดอก เมหน จิน. ผ่อม ปาย ที่หนึ่ง ถิ่น เวลาด้วย น้อย ที่มุม.
    Cue words: ปาย ปาย จกฤษฎี

r) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2 using ด้วย as the sentence connective.)

1. ร่อป ปาย กำแล่ ที่หนึ่ง ร้าป ขาว เวลาด้วย ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่มุม ด้วย ข้าม ถนน มาม มาก มาก ที่มุม.
    Let's hurry, otherwise we won't get back in time.

2. ถนน กลับที่ ดอก ประจํา ปาย ข้าม ที่หนึ่ง จิน ตอน ร้าป ดอก กลับ ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่หนึ่ง ด้วย ข้าม ถนน.
    It's raining. Don't go outside, or you'll get sick.

3. ร่อป ปาย กำแล่ ที่หนึ่ง ร้าป ขาว เวลาด้วย ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่หนึ่ง เวลาด้วย ถนน ข้าม แล้ว ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่หนึ่ง.
    Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't have time to eat lunch.

4. จิน ช้า มัก น้าก ร้าป ดอก กลับ ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่หนึ่ง ด้วย ข้าม ดอก มาม มาก มาก ที่หนึ่ง.
    Don't be so slow; otherwise, you won't get there in time.
5. จ้าพูธ ภำาสำา ำนกฤต  Kan sikhráp  Don't speak English, or you will forget Thai.
    kan sikhráp, ดีำว คำ ลย์ม ภำาสำา-
    thaj
    ดีำว คำ ฮำง มะจ ทิ่ม ทู้ค

6. จ้าดูน้ำง่าย sikhráp,  Don't look at your book, or your pronunciation will be bad.
    khun ca ฮำง ฮำง มะจ ทิ่ม ทู้ค

7. ติ่ยน thekhráp, ฮำจ ลีสว,  Get up. It's late already. Otherwise you won't get to work on time.
    khun ca pay thamphaan มะจ ทิ่ม ทู้ค
    ดีำว คำ ผาย ท่ามพำาณ มะจ ทิ่ม ทู้ค

8. จ้า ฮำจ นีน มะัก ฮัก  Don't spend so much money, otherwise you won't have any money for your trip to Europe.
    khun ca มะจ มีน นีน ทิ่สว จูรร์ฮ็อป
    ดีำว คำ มะจ มีน นีน ทิ่สว จูรร์ฮ็อป

9. จ้า thamphaan มะัก เทน ผ้ำจ  Don't work too much, or you get sick.
    khun ca มะจ ฮำบำาจ

10. จ้าทิ่สว มะัก  Don't go out a lot (in the evenings) or you'll fail your exams.
    khun ca ฮำบฮ่อ ทะ
    ดีำว คำ ฮำบฮ่อ ITERAL
s) **Completion Drill**

*Example:*  
T: rťip paj kan thekhráp, dỳaw (raw) ca...  
S: rťip paj kan thekhráp, dỳaw (raw) ca klàp maa mâj than

1. jàa noon dỳk nák dỳaw ca...  
2. jàa phùt rew nák dỳaw nákrian ca...  
3. rťip paj thekhráp dỳaw ca...  
4. phùt phaasàa thaj kan sikhráp dỳaw ca...  
5. jàa cháa nák sikhráp dỳaw naïan ca...  
6. jàa phùt naan kèen paj dỳaw kháw ca...  
7. jàa thamnàa mâak kèen paj dỳaw ca...  

t) **Response Drill** *(Give a negative response.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1 (Question)</th>
<th>Pattern 2 (Negative Response)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun chuan khraj paj dỳaj rúplàaw</td>
<td>mâj dâj chuan khraj (lèej)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you ask anyone to go along?</td>
<td>I didn't ask anyone (at all).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. khun rúucàk khraj thîinàn bàañ mâj | mâj rúucàk khraj (lèej) |
| Do you recognize anybody there? | No, I don't recognize anybody (at all). |

| 3. phóp khraj bàañ rûplàaw | mâj phóp khraj (lèej) |
| Did you meet anybody? | I didn't meet anybody (at all). |
4. sýy araj maa bâaŋ
   rýplàaw
   Did you buy anything?
   mâj dâj sýy araj maa (l̠e̱aj)
   I didn’t buy anything.

5. kamlaŋ khít araj jùu rýy
   Thinking about
   something?
   mâj dâj khít araj (l̠e̱aj)
   I’m not thinking about
   anything.

6. wanjùt, paj nǎaj bâaŋ
   rýplàaw
   Did you go anywhere
   on the holiday?
   mâj dâj paj nǎaj (l̠e̱aj)
   I didn’t go anywhere.

u) **Response Drill** (Give a negative response)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. mii khraj jùu bâaŋ
   Was anybody in?
   mâj mii khraj jùu
   Nobody was in. |
| 2. mii khraj rúucâk khâw bâaŋ
   Did anybody recognize him?
   mâj mii khraj rúucâk
   Nobody recognized him. |
| 3. mii khraj hên bâaŋ
   Does anybody see?
   mâj mii khraj hên
   No one sees. |
| 4. mii khraj tham dâj bâaŋ
   Can anyone do it?
   mâj mii khraj tham dâj
   Nobody can do it. |
| 5. mii khon maa māj
   Is anybody (at all)
   mâj mii khraj maa
   Nobody came. |
6. mîi khôn maa hâa rîplâaw  mâj mîi khrâj maa
     Did anyone (at all) come visiting?    Nobody came.

7. mîi khôn thoo maa bânâñ rîplâaw  mâj mîi khrâj thoo maa
     Did anyone telephone?     Nobody called.

v) Transformation Drill

Change from the human indefinite general form khôn to the human indefinite familiar form khrâj.

Pattern 1

1. mîi khôn thoo maa bânâñ rîplâaw
   Were there any calls?

2. mîi khôn maa hâa rîplâaw
   Were there any visitors?

3. mîi khôn maa lêñ dontrii rîplâaw
   Did people come and play music?

4. mîi khôn paj duu kilaa mâak mâj
   Do many people go watch sports?

5. mîi khôn paj chûaj khâw rîplâaw
   Did he get help from anyone?

Pattern 2

mîi khrâj thoo maa bânâñ rîplâaw
   Did anyone call?

mîi khrâj maa hâa (phôm) rîplâaw
   Did anyone come to see me?

mîi khrâj maa lêñ dontrii rîplâaw
   Did anyone come and play music?

mîi khrâj paj duu kilâa mâj
   Does anyone (of you) (go) watch sports?

mîi khrâj paj chûaj khâw rîplâaw
   Did anybody go help him?
**Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

1. `khrajkhraj บุคคลหญิงว่าหญิงเชียงใหม่สุภาพ`  
   Everybody tells me Chiangmai women are beautiful.

2. `khrajkhraj ชอบเปรียญข้าว penet จนสุนัข`  
   Everybody likes him because he's a lot of fun.

3. `มั่งค่าแห่งที่เกิดขึ้น, khrajkhraj ก็จะร่ำรวย`  
   Not just me, (but) everybody wants to be rich.

4. `ข้าวบุคคล khrajkhraj ว่าข้าว penet นาฏตา ramรุ่ง`  
   He told everybody he was a policeman.

**Transformation Drill**  (Change to negative.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. `khrajkhraj ก็บุคคลหญิง`  `มั่งค่า mii khraj บุคคลหญิง`  
   `ว่าเชียงใหม่ไม่สุภาพ`  `wàa chiangmàj nàajùu`  
   Everybody told me  `Chiangmai is a nice`  
   `place to live.`  `wàa chiangmàj nàajùu`  
   Nobody told me  `Chiangmai was a`  
   `nice place to live.` |                                                   |
| 2. `khrajkhraj ก็ชอบข้าว`  `มั่งค่า mii khraj ชอบข้าว`  
   `Everybody likes him.`  `wàa thammaj khun mìaj pàj`  
   `Everybody asked me`  `wàa thammaj khun mìaj pàj`  
   `why you didn't go.`  `Nobody asked me why`  
   `you didn't go.` |                                                   |
| 3. `khrajkhraj ก็ทั้งหมดกิน`  `มั่งค่า mii khraj ทั้งหมดกิน`  
   `Everybody wants to`  `wàa thammaj khun mìaj pàj`  
   `see.`  `wàa thammaj khun mìaj pàj` |                                                   |

514
29.4 EXERCISES

a) One student extends an invitation to another, The second student indicates that he is:

1. willing  2. unwilling  or 3. reluctant to accept the invitation.

b) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he did something. Student 2 says he didn't. When student 1 asks him why he didn't, he says that he didn't want to do it.

c) Repeat the above exercise except for the final response. In the final response Student 2 says he didn't do it because he was busy, sick, etc.

d) Student 1 says: 'A friend said to me, would you like to...'. Student 2 says: 'Did he invites your wife to go too!'. Student 1 says: 'No, he didn't.'

e) Student 1: 'Would you like to...'
Student 2: 'Are you inviting my wife to go along too?'
Student 1: 'I am.'

f) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he has finished doing something (reading books, studying, etc.) Student 2 says he has and tells when he finished (or) says that he hasn't and gives the reason.

g) Student 1 asks Student 2 when he arrived at a certain place. Student 2 gives him the time. Student 1 asks him if he got there on time. Student 2 says he did or he didn't.

h) Student 1 says to Student 2: 'Have you finished --- yet? Student 2 says: 'Yes, I have, but (Student 3) hasn't yet. Student 3 says: 'That's not so. I've already finished.' (Substitute different activities in the first question.)
1) Student 1: 'Let's hurry.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: Otherwise we won't get to school on time.
(Substitute other place names for school.)

j) Student 1: 'Don't be so slow.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: 'Otherwise you won't get to ... on time.'

29.5 VOCABULARY

aâw oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)

aw máj will you accept? (question word: It is similar in usage to dîi máj.)

indianâ Indiana

ôoksǐar to pronounce

chíkhaakôo Chicago

dľaw or else, otherwise

jîam to go to see, to visit

kaanbanjaaj lecturing, narration

kaanprachum a meeting conference, session

khamtôop (khôo) the answer

lēek to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up

pâaj (traffic) stop sign, tag, sign

pâaj rótmee bus stop
prachum  to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting, meeting, assemble
pradit  Pradit (given name)
сет  to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
than  to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
(kan)  thè, (thè, thèet)  why not, let's
thịi prachum (hèn)  a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY

(Part I.)

30.1 BASIC EPISODE:

A Visit to the Seventh Day Adventist Hospital

khun coon kamlañ ca paj jïam phyan thïi roonphajaabaan mitchân. phyan khïön kháw mâj sabaaj maa khaj wan lëew
kháw hâj khoncháj paj rïak théksìi hâj kháw nỳn khan.
kháw mâj jâak paj rïak een phró weelaa théksìi hën faràŋ
kháw mák ca bök raakhaa khâadoojsñan phsen.

khoncháj rïak théksìi maa hâj kháw khan nỳn . pen rôtmâj .
khai bök khun coon wâa càak bân khun coon paj roonphjaabaan mitchân khonkhàp khit khâadoojsañ slphâa bât. khun coon bök wâa phsen paj .
khai hâj khoncháj tòo slp bàat.
théksìi bök wâa thâa mâj dâj slpsöön bàat khâw kô mâj paj
phró thëwnân rôt tlত.
théksìi khonnán khaprôt rew mâak . khun coon khïo hâj kháw
khâp cháa cháa tê khonkhàp mâj fan khâw leej . khun coon
mâj sâap ca tham janraj dii.

khun coon mâj sâap wâa thaan roonphajaabaan anújâat hâj
khâw jïam khonkhâj dâj kïi moon . khâw paj thëñ thïinân
cháa keen paj , khâw leej paj jïam phyan mâj than . khâw
rïak rôt théksìi khan nỳn lë bök hâj paj sön khâw thïi
talàat nát , sanñam luññ.
30.2 Questions on the Basic Episode

1. khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchān thammaj
2. thammaj khàw thỳn māj rīak thêksìi een
3. càak bāàn khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchān thêksìi khít khâadoojśāan thâwrâj
4. khun coon hâj khonchâj tôo thâwrâj
5. thêksìi bòok wâa jannaj
6. thêksìi khonnàn khàpròt pen jannaj bāan
7. khun coon tham jannaj. khâw bòok khonkhâp wâa jannaj
8. khun coon paj than jìam phỳan māj
9. thammaj khâw thỳn paj māj than
10. càak roonphajaabaan mitchān, khâw paj nāj

(Part II.)

30.3 Basic Episode: A Visit to the Sunday Market.

khun coon deen thīaw talàatnāt jùu lāaj chûamoŋ. thîinìi mìi kh̄oŋkhàaj thûk jàan, thân kh̄oŋchâj, tōnmâaj, lē sàtlīāŋ. kh̄oŋ thîinìi baan jàan kē thûuk, baan jàan kē pheŋ. khun coon sỳy kh̄oŋ lāaj jàan. khâw sỳy kh̄oŋlën hâj lûuk lē kh̄oŋchâj hâj phanrajaa. khâw sỳy kh̄oŋ plèskplèsek thīi ameerikaa māj mìi hâj khunphâo khunmēs khâw. khâw khît wâa mỳa thỳŋ wan khrîtsamâat khâw ca sòn kh̄oŋ làwnìi paj hâj khunphâo khunmēs kh̄oŋ khâw thīi ameerikaa. sàmrâp nōoŋsāaw kh̄oŋkhâw, khâw jāŋ māj sâap wâa ca hâj araj dii.
ประเทศไทย

30.4 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE (Part II.)

1. khun coon dean thiaaw jùu naan mái
2. thîinân mîi araj khãaj bãan
3. khôon thîinân thuuk réy phsen
4. khun coon sîy araj dáj bãan
5. wankhîtsamâat khun coon ca sôn araj paj hâj khunphôo khunmês kháw
6. wan khrîtsamâat khun coon ca hâj khônkhwân araj nôôsâaw kháw
7. khanâthîi kháw ca klàp kháw phôp khrai
8. khun samään thamnaan araj
9. kháw kheaj paj ameerikaa máj . mýaraj
10. kháw paj een rýy dâj thun paj
11. kháw paj ameerikaa thammaj
12. thîi ameerikaa, khun coon phóp khun sanšan mýarâj
13. thammaj câwnâathîi krasuan tânprathēet thýn nénam
    hâj nákrian thîi rian phaasâathaj rúcâk khonthaj thîi
    paj câak myânthaj

30.5 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) mýa occurs in two different types of constructions:

1. mýa + \{ Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase \}

2. mýa + Sentence

   In the first type mýa means 'at the time of' and usually
   refers to events in the past.
   Examples are: mýa khythynnîi 'last night'
                  mýa cháawnîi 'this morning' (when the morning
                           has passed)
                  mýa dÈk (dÈk) 'in childhood'

   In mýa + Sentences constructions the reference may be to past time:
   phôm maa mýa kháw paj lèsâw 'I came when he had already
goûne.'

   Or to future time or to 'conditional' situations:
   mýa phôm mii rôt, phôm (thýn) ca paj dâj 'When I have a car, I'll
    be able to go.'

521
THAI BASIC COURSE

kháw ca chúaj khun (kô têə)
mêa kháw hên wâa khun mî
praﬁot kakháw

'He will help you only when he sees that you are useful to him.'

b) Although both sêt and côp are complective verbs they differ somewhat in meaning and usage:

1. sêt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thampan sêt lêsw
kháw jân tham mâj sêt

'He has finished working.'
'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. côp 'to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)'.

lik 2 dyan phôm ca rian
phaasãa thaj côp khráp
raw duu nêñ mâj côp

'I'll finish the Thai course in 2 months.'
'We didn't see the movie to the end.'

NOTE: Either sêt or côp may occur in sentences which are otherwise identical. The selection of one over the other indicates a difference in emphasis or focus. With sêt the focus is on the activity in general; with côp it is on the completion of a particular action.

kháw khûñ côtmaaj sêt
kháw khûñ côtmaaj côp
lêsw
lêsw

'He has finished letter writing.'
'He has finished writing a (the) letter.'
30.6 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

mûa waanîi  
yesterday
mûa cháaw  
this morning (past time)
mûa bàaj sõn mooŋ  
2 p.m. (It's later than that now.)
mûa khîyyn  
last night
mûa dèk (dèk)  
in childhood
mûa phôm maa thûŋ thîinîi  
When I had just got here.
màng màj  

mûa phôm jaŋ thamnâaan jûu  
When I was still working here.
thîinîn

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. khàw ca maa thûŋ weelaa bàaj mooŋ  
   He'll get her at 1 p.m.

2. phôm ca thaan weelaa hâa mooŋ jen  
   I'll eat at 5 p.m.

3. phôm ca phôm khàw jennîi  
   I'll meet her this evening.

4. khàw ca paj tcooncháaw  
   They'll go in the morning.

Pattern 2

khàw maa thûŋ (lêsw) mûa bàaj mooŋ  
He got here at 1 p.m.

phôm thaañ (lêsw) mûa hâa mooŋ jen  
I ate at 5 p.m.

phôm phôm khàw (lêsw) mûa jennîi  
I met her this evening.

khàw paj mûa (toon) cháaw  
They went in the morning.
5. Khàw ca maa hâa phôm weelaa khàw maa hâa phôm mûa bàaj
   bàaj mooñ mooñ
   He'll come to see me He came to see me at
   at 1 p.m. 1 p.m.

c) Response Drill

The instructor reads a cue sentence then forms a question based on it. A student gives a response to it. The instructor forms a second sentence, and the student answers that. Sentences and responses are based on the cue sentence.

1. mûa khàw rian còp, khàw kô klàp maa myan thaj
   When he finished his studies, he returned to Thailand.

   Question                       Response
   mûa khàw rian còp,            khàw klàp paj myan thaj
   khàw tham jaññaj
       When he finished his studies, what did he do?

2. mûa khàw dèk dèk, khàw chûop nûi rian
   When he was a child, he liked to avoid studying.

   Question                       Response
   mûa dèk dèk, khàw pen         khàw chûop nûi rian
   jaññaj
       What was he like, when he was a child? He liked to avoid studying.
3. **phum maa m̄a khāw paj lēsw**
   I came when he had already gone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phum maa m̄a r̄yjan</td>
<td>m̄a khāw paj lēsw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did I come?</td>
<td>When he had already gone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toon th̄ī kh̄āw jān jùu</td>
<td>jān māj maa . khun maa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phum maa r̄yjan</td>
<td>m̄a khāw paj lēsw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Had I come while he was still there?</td>
<td>Not yet. You came after he had already gone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **m̄a phum r̄ēm rian phaas̄ā thaj māj māj, phom khit wāa phaas̄ā thaj jāak māak**
   Right after I started studying Thai, I thought it was very hard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m̄a phum r̄ēm rian phaas̄ā thaj māj māj, phom rūus̄yk jān̄naj</td>
<td>khun khit wāa phaas̄ā thaj jāak māak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right after I began studying Thai, how did I feel?</td>
<td>You thought Thai was very hard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now I think Thai isn't hard, right?

Not so. Now you don't think it's (as) hard(as) when you first started studying it.

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun àn näns̄yy lêmn̄î còp lèsw rýjan̄ khráp</td>
<td>phôm àn näns̄yy lêmn̄î còp lèsw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you finished reading this book yet?</td>
<td>I have finished reading this book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun àn näns̄yy lêmn̄ân còp lèsw rýjan̄ khráp</td>
<td>phôm àn näns̄yy lêm nán jaŋ mài còp khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you finished reading that book yet?</td>
<td>I haven't finished reading that book yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun khýán còtm̄aj còp lèsw rýjan̄ khráp. phôm ca paj sôn hâj</td>
<td>phôm khýán còtm̄aj jaŋ mài còp khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you finished writing that letter yet? I'll mail it for you.</td>
<td>I haven't finished writing the letter yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun ca rian phaaS̄a thaj còp mỳarâj khráp</td>
<td>phôm ca rian còp dyan nâa khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When will you finish studying Thai?</td>
<td>I'll finish next month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

526
5. khun rian bòt thīi slé pès t còp lēsw rýjaŋ khráp
   (phôm) rian (bòt thīi slé pès t) jāŋ māj còp khráp
   Have you finished studying lesson 18 yet?
   (I) haven't finished studying (lesson 18) yet.

6. mỹakhyynníi, khun duu nãŋ còp māj khráp
   mỹakhyynníi, raw duu nãŋ māj còp phró tsoon rīp klàp bāan koon nãŋ lēek
   Did you finish seeing the movie last night? (see to the end)
   No, because we had to hurry home before it was over.

7. khun phūt còp (rýaŋ) māj khráp
   phôm phūt māj còp khráp
   Did you finish telling your story.
   phorm phūt māj còp khráp
   I didn't finish because they gave me too little time.

8. khun rian (mahāwītthajalaj)
    còp píi nãŋ khráp
    phôm rian còp píi phōoścò còp
    In which year did you graduate from the university?
    sŏn phan hāarōoj khráp
    I graduated in B.E. 2500.

9. khun còp cāak mahāwītthajalaj araj khráp
    phôm còp cāak mahāwītthajalaj indiānā khráp
    What university did you graduate from?
    I graduated from the University of Indiana.
Translation of Basic Episode: Part I.

John is about to go visit a friend at the 7th Day Adventist Hospital. His friend has been ill for several days.

He had a servant to get a taxi (for him). He didn't want to go for one himself, because whenever taxis see a Westerner, they ask for higher fares.

The servant called a taxi for him. It was new. He told John the driver figured the fare from his house to the Adventist Hospital at 15 baht. John said it was too expensive. He had the servant bargain for 10. The taxi (driver) said that if he didn't get 12 baht, then he wasn't going because the traffic was heavy in that area.

The driver drove very fast. John asked him to drive slower, but the driver didn't listen to him at all. John didn't know what to do.

John didn't know at what time the hospital allowed one to visit patients. He got there too late, so he didn't get there in time to visit his friend. He called a taxi and told (the driver) to take him to the (Sunday) Market at the Pramane Grounds.

Translation of Basic Episode: Part II.

John spent hours walking around at the Sunday Market. There were all kinds of things for sale there: things to use, plants, and pets. Some things were cheap; some expensive. John bought a lot of things. He bought toys for children and things to use for his wife. He bought unusual things that are not available in the U.S. for his mother and father. He thought he'd send some of these things to his mother and father in America at Christmas. He didn't know what he ought to give to his younger sister.

The shopping done, John goes home. While he is standing looking for a taxi, he meets a friend. His friend is name Saman. Saman studied in America. After he graduated, he
THAI BASIC COURSE

returned to Thailand and worked as an employee of the Ministry of the Interior. He got a grant to go observe work (1) in America in 1960. John met Saman while John was studying Thai in America. At that time he met many Thais because when there are Thais visiting Washington, State Department officials introduce them to the students of Thai, because they want student to meet Thais and to practice speaking Thai with many Thais.

30.7 VOCABULARY

duu ɳaan to observe work, an observation
(fỳk)hàt to practice, drill, train
khanáthii while
khonkhâj (khon) patients
khɔŋlên (jàaŋ) play things, toy
làwnñi these, this group
làwnñán those, that group
nénam to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khámñénam advice, suggestion, instruction
plèsk (plèsk) to be unusual, to be strange
samñan Saman, male or female first name
sàt (tua) animal
...lìaŋ (tua) pet
thun (thun) a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
tôn màaj (tôn) plants, tree

(1) An observation tour
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-ONE

31.0 BASIC DIALOG: Looking for a Place to Live

A: นี่awaysaanníi phôm paj hâa
    khun têe máj phôp

B: phôm paj hâa bâanchâaw

A: khun ca jùu een lê

B: plàaw. hâa hâj phîyân
    khun wâa, jùu bân ka jùu
    apháatmên nêj ca dii kwâa
    kan

A: phîyân khun pen sòot rî
    têñnaan lêsêw

B: pen sòot khrâp

A: khwaamcin, tua phôm een
    chôop jùu bân màak kwâa
    têe sâmràp khon sòot, phôm
    wâa jùu fitèt dii kwâa

B: thammaj lakhrâp

A: sadùak kwâa jùu bân
    lê plyan nöoj kwâa phró
    máj têñ cân châng khoncháj
    lêñaj khon

Yesterday I went to see you but didn’t see you.

I went to look for a house to rent.

Will you live (there) yourself?

No. I'm looking for a friend.

You think it’s better to live in a house or an apartment?

Is your friend single or married?

He’s single.

Actually, as for me I prefer living in a house.

But for single persons, I think living in a flat is better.

Why?

It's more convenient than living in a house.

And less expensive, because you don't have to hire a lot of servants.
B: คินะ
dit phaj kwàa dûaj
mâj tên klua khamooj

Right.
It's safer too.
You don't have to be afraid of thieves.

31.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) phôp and dâj occur after hâa 'to look for', try to find' and indicate the result of the action of 'looking'.

Observe the following examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hâa phôp mâj</td>
<td>(hâa) phôp</td>
<td>(hâa) mâj phôp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Did you get to see him? '</td>
<td>'Yes, I did.'</td>
<td>'No, I didn't.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hâa dâj mâj</td>
<td>(hâa) dâj</td>
<td>(hâa) mâj dâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Did you get (what you were looking for) ?'</td>
<td>'Yes, I did.'</td>
<td>'No, I didn't.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe also these two examples:

(phôm) hâa mâj dâj phró mâj mìi khâaj
'I didn't get any because it wasn't for sale.'

(phôm) hâa mâj phôp phró mâj jûu
'I didn't get to see him because he wasn't in.'

cæ 'to meet, run into unexpectedly' may replace phôp in constructions with hâa involving human beings, thus hâa phôp mâj or hâa cæ mâj 'Did you get to see him? ' In constructions referring to objects cæ rather than phôp is used, thus
A: น้ำสัญญา หาย 'I lost my book.'
B: หาย เดี๋ย มาย 'Did you find it?'
A: ตาย เดี๋ย 'No, I didn't.'

When เดี๋ย is used as the main verb in the sentence, it has the meaning 'to meet unexpectedly':

เมายาฝนฝาม เดี๋ย พ่น กว่า 'Yesterday I ran into an old friend.'

b) /kwàa/ means 'more than, to a greater extent'.

1. After stative verbs, use /kwàa/ alone.

Examples:

พยาบาลแอนตริต จัก kwàa พยาบาลที่ว่า 'English is more difficult than Thai.'

2. After other verbs, use มาก kwàa for 'more than' and น้อย kwàa for 'less than'.

Examples:

ปิณใน raw miii นักเรียน น้อย kwàa พิ้ล คอน 'This year we have more students than last year.'

พ่อ ซ่ง cond คุณ มาก kwàa ก่าว 'I like you less than him.'

3. Where degree of difference is stated, observe in the following examples, the position of forms indicating degree of difference.
### THAI BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1.)</th>
<th>NP¹</th>
<th>Stative Verb + kwaa</th>
<th>NP²</th>
<th>Degree of Difference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thîînî mîi</td>
<td>nákrian</td>
<td>màak kwàa</td>
<td>khruu</td>
<td>400 khon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here there are</td>
<td>students</td>
<td>more than</td>
<td>teachers</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'There are 400 more students than teachers here.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(2.)</th>
<th>khun</th>
<th>sñaj kwàa</th>
<th>kháw</th>
<th>màak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>much</td>
<td>a lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'You are a lot prettier than she (is).'</p>

**c) khít (wâa) jannaŋ versus khít araj**

Use *jannaŋ* when asking for a person's opinion or comment on something.

- **khun khít (wâa) jannaŋ**  'What do you think?'
- **khun wâa jannaŋ**  (What's your opinion?)
- **kháw wâa jannaŋ**  'What did he say?'
  (What was his reaction?)

Use *araj* to find out what is in a person's mind.

- **khun kamḷan khít araj**  'What are you thinking about?'
  'of?'

---

533
31.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

**Pattern 1**

1.  haa têe mâj phóp
   looked for but didn't meet with

2.  haa têe mâj cêe
   looked for but didn't meet with

3.  haa têe mâj dâj
   looked for but didn't get

**Pattern 2** (contracted form)

   haa mâj phóp
didn't find

   haa mâj cêe
didn't find

   haa mâj dâj
didn't succeed in getting

b) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns a and b to form Pattern c.)

**Patterns a and b**

1.  khâw jàak phóp phûân
   a.  khâw paj haa phûân thîi bân
   b.  khâw mâj phóp phûân
       He wanted to see his friend.
       He went to see his friend at home.
       He did not meet his friend.

2.  lûuksâaw khâw hâaj
   a.  khâw hâaj lûuksâaw
   b.  khâw mâj {cêe lûuksâaw}
       phóp
       His daughter disappeared.
       He looked for his daughter.
       He didn't find his daughter.

**Pattern c**

   khâw paj haa phûân
   (têe) mâj phóp
   He went to see his friend but didn't see him.

   khâw haa lûuksâaw
   (têe) mâj {cêe phóp
   He looked for his daughter without success.
3. น่านสีย ที่ผม หา
   a. ที่ผม หา น่านสีย
   b. ที่ผม หา น่านสีย
      ล้มมัน
      ผม หา น่านสีย
      ผม ไม่ ได้ หา น่านสีย

4. ที่ผม หา น่านสีย ล้มมัน
   a. ที่ผม (สีย) น่านสีย ล้มมัน
   b. ที่ผม ที่ผม น่านสีย ล้มมัน
      ผม ต้องการ ที่ผม น่านสีย ล้มมัน
      ผม หา น่านสีย ล้มมัน
      ผม ไม่ ได้ หา น่านสีย ล้มมัน

   c) Expansion Drill

   1. ได้ มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      สีย
      ปากค้า

   2. หลาย มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      ผ่าน

   3. คือ มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      ขอ

   ที่ผม หา น่านสีย
   (ที่) มา ค้า
   ผม หา น่านสีย
   ผม ไม่ ค้า น่านสีย
   ผม หานำ (สีย) น่านสีย
   ล้มมัน (ที่) มา ด้วย
   ผม ต้องการ ที่ผม น่านสีย ล้มมัน
   ผม หา น่านสีย ล้มมัน
   ผม ไม่ ค้า น่านสีย ล้มมัน

   1. ได้ มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      สีย
      ปากค้า

   2. หลาย มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      ผ่าน

   3. คือ มา ขาย ข้าว
      หา
      ขอ
d) **Response Drill** *(Respond affirmatively to the questions, if the cue word indicates that the search was successful (essoa), respond negatively, if the cue word indicates that the search was unsuccessful (maj essoa)).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mỳawaaní1 khun paj häa</td>
<td>kháw phóp maj khráp</td>
<td>kháw essoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you find him when you went to see him yesterday?</td>
<td>He was in.</td>
<td>(Yes) I did.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. mỳakfiní1 khun paj häa</td>
<td>nákphaaasáa phóp maj khráp</td>
<td>maj essoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you went to see the linguist a while ago, did you find him?</td>
<td>He wasn't in.</td>
<td>(No), I didn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. mỳakhyynní1, kháw maa häa</td>
<td>khun phóp maj</td>
<td>jùu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When he came to see you last night, did he see you?</td>
<td>I was in.</td>
<td>He did.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. (khun) paj häa m̀o phóp</td>
<td>maj</td>
<td>jùu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you went to see the doctor, did you see him?</td>
<td>He was in.</td>
<td>I did.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. หมาลิ่นใ, ญญักณูน ม้า กุณหน้า ถี รูนนี่

ห้า กุณหนัง คี่ที รูนนี่

พอป้า จ้าก้าร์ป  ม้าจูน  ม้าจ่ปป็อป

A short time ago when your friend came to see you at school, did you meet?

I wasn't in. He didn't.

6.  กุณหน้า บี้ ทูроссий์ป

ขื่าัน ก้าว์ น้ําจ่ปป็อป

ทูроссий์ป พอป้า จ้าก้าร์ป  ม้าจูน  น้ําจ่ปป็อป  ม้าจ่ปป็อป

Did you find his number in the phone book?

It wasn't there. I didn't.

e) Substitution Response Drill

The teacher gives 2 cue words. One student forms a statement using the first cue word. Another student asks the question ห้า คํา จ้าก้าร์ป. The first then responds either negatively or affirmatively according to the second cue word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue word</th>
<th>Statement/question/response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>นันษ์ย์.... No</td>
<td>S1: นันษ์ย์ ภูมิห้าจ้</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S2: ห้า คํา จ้าก้าร์ป</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1: จ้าก้าร์ป</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continue the drill using the following cue words:

1. นันษ์ย์ ภูมิ.... No  2. ป้าก้าา ภูมิ.... Yes
3. ตันส้อง ภูมิ.... No  4. ลูักช้าง.... No
5. ห่อนช้าง.... Yes  6. ร็อท ภูมิ.... Yes
7. น้าลิก้า ก้าว.... No  8. กระปัญช้าง ภูมิ.... No
f) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. mii khun hāa náŋṣ́y y lēmnán dâj máj khráp | Did you find that book? | dâj khráp  
 I did. |
| 2. mii khun hāa sýy náŋṣ́y y phaasǎa thaj dâj máj khráp | Were you able to buy the Thai book you were looking for? | dâj khráp  
 I was. |
| 3. mâj mii khun hāa khoncháj dâj máj khráp | Were you able to find the servants you were looking for? | mâj dâj khráp  
 No, I wasn't. |
| 4. mâj mii khâw hāa khruu sǒon phaasǎa āŋkrǐt dâj máj khráp | Did you find the English teacher you were looking for? | mâj dâj khráp  
 No, I didn't. |
| 5. mâj mii khun hāa bâan dâj máj khráp | Did you find the house you were looking for? | mâj dâj khráp  
 No, I didn't. |

g) **Transformation Drill**

**Pattern 1 and 2**

1. mỳawaanníi róon  

Yesterday it was hot.

**Pattern 3**

wanníi róon mâak  

Today it's very hot.

wanníi róon kwàa mỳawaanníi  

It's hotter today than yesterday.
2. ภู domina ก่อนน่า สวย
   That girl's pretty.
   ภู domina ก่อนน่า สวย มาก
   This girl's very pretty.
   ภู domina ก่อนน่า สวย กว่า
   This girl is prettier
     than that one.

3. บ้าน ฝน กลาง
   My house is far.
   บ้าน รaining กลาง มาก
   His house is very far.
   บ้าน ฝน กลาง กว่า บ้าน ฝน
   His house is farther than
     mine.

4. ก้าวตก ร้อน
   In the daytime it's hot.
   ก้าวตก ร้อน มาก
   At night it's not hot.
   ก้าวตก ร้อน กว่า ก้าวตก
   It's hotter in the daytime
     than at night.

5. ที่นี่ นานต่าง ได้
   There the weather is good.
   ที่นี่ นานต่าง ได้ มาก
   Here the weather is
     very good.
   ที่นี่ นานต่าง ได้ กว่า
   Here the weather is better
     than there.

6. นักเรียน ก่อนน่า เก่ง
   This student is smart.
   นักเรียน ก่อนน่า เก่ง มาก
   That student is very smart.
   นักเรียน ก่อนน่า เก่ง กว่า
   That student is smarter
     than this one.
7. aahăn thîl ráannán dii
   The food in that shop
   is good.

   aahăn thîl ráanníi dii mąak.
   The food in this shop
   is very good.

   aahăn thîl ráanníi dii kwàa
   raannán
   The food in this shop
   is better than in that
   shop.

8. kháw duu nánsîy dyk
   He studies late at night.

   phôm duu nánsîy dyk mąak
   I study very late at night.

   phôm duu nánsîy dyk kwàa kháw
   I study later at night
   than he.

9. kháw maa roonrian cháaw
   He came to school early.

   phôm maa roonrian săaj
   I came to school late.

   phôm maa roonrian săaj kwàa
   khaw
   I came to school later
   than he.

   (kháw maa roonrian cháaw
   kwàa phôm)
   He came to school earlier
   than I.

10. phaasăa thaj mâj jâak
    Thai is not hard.

    phaasăa ankrîlt jâak
    English is hard.

    phaasăa ankrîlt jâak kwàa
    phaasăa thaj
    English is harder than Thai.
11. น่าน วันนี้ มั่ง สันุก
   That day's party wasn't fun.
   น่าน วันนี้ สันุก
   Today's party is fun.
   น่าน วันนี้ สันุก กว่า
   The party today is more fun than that other party.

12. รถ ก้าว
    His car is old.
    รถ พ่อ มั่ง
    My car is new.
    รถ พ่อ มั่ง กว่า รถ ก้าว
    My car is newer than his.

13. จู อี บ้าน สะดวก
    It's convenient to live in a house.
    จู อี อพ้า ที่น่ำ บ้าน สะดวก
    It's very convenient to live in an apartment.
    จู อี อพ้า ที่น่ำ บ้าน
    Living in an apartment is more convenient than living in a house.

14. จู อี อพ้า ที่น่ำ มั่ง ล่าย
    Living in an apartment is not expensive.
    จู อี บ้าน ล่าย ที่น่ำ
    Living in a house is very expensive.
    จู อี บ้าน ล่าย ที่น่ำ กว่า จู อพ้า ที่น่ำ
    Living in a house is more expensive than living in an apartment.
### Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. jùu naj myañ</td>
<td>jùu naj myañ ka jùu nāok myañ, nāj ca sadùak kwàa kan</td>
<td>Living in the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. jùu kruṃṭhēep</td>
<td>jùu kruṃṭhēep ka jùu tāāncaŋwát, nāj ca płyañ kwàa kan</td>
<td>Living in Bangkok.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ubon</td>
<td>ubon ka khoorâat, nāj ca jùu klaw (càak kruṃṭhēep) kwàa kan</td>
<td>Ubon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sùkhǒothaj</td>
<td>caŋwát ajuṭhajaa ka sùkhǒothaj kāw sùkhǒothaj, nāj ca kāw kwàa kan</td>
<td>Sukhotai.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. rōt khannán</td>
<td>rōt khannán ka rōt khannī, nāj ca pheŋ kwàa kan</td>
<td>That one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. nakrian channan nakrian channan ka chanii, nadj ca mak kwaa kan

In which class are there more students, that one or this one? That one.

7. krunthep krunthep ka chiamaj, nadj ca mii khon juu mak kwaa kan

Which has a larger population, Bangkok or Chiangmai? Bangkok.

1) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. nakrian kaw</td>
<td>nakrian kaw ka nakrian maj, khraj ca phut phasaa thaj daj dii kwaa kan</td>
<td>nakrian kaw phut daj dii kwaa Which can speak Thai better, the old students or the new ones? The old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun sawat</td>
<td>khun sawat kakhun prasong khraj (ca) keng kwaa kan</td>
<td>khun sawat keng kwaa Who is more skillful, Sawat or Prasong? Sawat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. phyan khonnan</td>
<td>phyan khun khonnan ka phani, khraj (ca) khawcay khun dii kwaa kan</td>
<td>phyan phom khonnan khawcay phom dii kwaa Who understands you better, that friend of yours or this one? That one understands me better.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. khun coon  khun coon ka khun cim, khraj  khun coon khàp
khàp ròt rew kwàa kan  rew kwàa
Who drives faster, John or Jim?
John.

j) Expansion Drill

1. mâak kwàa
   mii mâak kwàa
   mii nên mâak kwàa
   kháw mii nên mâak kwàa
   kháw mii nên mâak kwàa phôm

2. mâak kwàa
   mii mâa’t kwàa
   mii nákrian mâak kwàa
   chánnán mii nákrian mâak kwàa
   chánnán mii nákrian mâak kwàa chánní1

3. mâak kwàa
   mii mâak kwàa
   mii weelaa mâak kwàa
   mii weelaa wâañ mâak kwàa
   kháw mii weelaa wâañ mâak kwàa
   kháw mii weelaa wâañ kwàa phôm

4. mâak kwàa
   chòop mâak kwàa
   chòop jùu bâan mâak kwàa
   phôm chòop jùu bâan mâak kwàa
   phôm chòop jùu bâan mâak kwàa jùu apháatmênt
5.  mâak kwàa
    chòp mâak kwàa
    chòp khun mâak kwàa
    phôm chòp khun mâak kwàa
    phôm chòp khun mâak kwàa kháw

6.  mâak kwàa
    tham mâak kwàa
    kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa
    kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa phôm
    kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa phôm lâaj chûamoŋ

k)  Transformation Drill

**Pattern 1 and 2**

1.  kháw rian náŋʂy wan la hòk chûamoŋ
   He has classes 6 hours a day.
   raw rian náŋʂy wan la sli chûamoŋ
   We have classes 4 hours a day.

**Pattern 3**

    kháw rian náŋʂy mâak kwàa
    raw wan la s󰇁ŋ chûamoŋ
    He has classes 2 hours more per day than we do.

2.  thǐi roongrian mii khruu róoj khon
    There are 100 teachers at school.
    thǐi roongrian mii nákrian hāa róoj khon
    There are 500 students at school.
    thǐi roongrian mii nákrian mâak kwàa khruu sli róoj khon
    There are 400 more students than teachers at school.
3. khun wichaj mii bût sli khon
   Wichai has 4 children.

   khun prasèet mii bût sŏŋ khon
   Prasert has 2 children.

   kwàa khun prasèet sŏŋ khon
   Wichai has 2 more children
   than Prasert.

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

   nŏoj kwàa                     less
   plyan nŏoj kwàa               less beautiful
   mii nŏoj kwàa                 have less
   chòop nŏoj kwàa               like less
   phûut nŏoj kwàa               speak less
   tham nŏoj kwàa                do less
   thaan nŏoj kwàa               eat less
   sŏy nŏoj kwàa                 buy less
   rian nŏoj kwàa                study less

m) Transformation Drill

   Pattern 1

   1. khŏong thîi ráan nîi mii mâak kwàa
   khŏong thîi ráan nûon
   There are more things in
   this shop than that one.

   2. khâw mii nêen mâak kwàa phôm
   He has more money than I.

   Pattern 2

   khŏong thîi ráan nôon mii
   nóoj kwàa ráan nîi
   There are less things
   in that shop than this
   one.

   phôm mii nêen nóoj kwàa khâw
   I have less money than he.
3. kháw cháj néen màak kwàà phôm.
   He spends more money than I.
   phôm cháj néen nööj kwàà kháw
   I spend less money than he.

4. jùu bân plynâ plyn kwàà jùu
   apháatmên.
   Living in a house is more expensive than living in
   an apartment.
   jùu apháatmên plynâ nööj
   kwàà jùu bân
   Living in an apartment is less expensive than
   living in a house.

5. nööj khôn khun sòmsàk rian
   màak kwàà khun sòmsàk
   Somsak's younger brothers
   and sisters study more
   than he.
   khun sòmsàk rian nööj kwàà
   nööj khôn kháw
   Somsak studies less than
   his younger siblings.

6. phûûjîn khonnán phûût màak
   kwàà phûûjîn khonnión
   That woman talks more than
   the one over there.
   phûûjîn khonnión phûût nööj
   kwàà phûûjîn khonnán
   The woman over there
   talks less than that
   one.

7. phôm cháj nööj phûût màak
   kwàà kháw
   I like his friends better
   than him.
   phôm cháj nööj kwàà
   phûût kháw
   I like him less than
   (I like) his friends.

8. khun sòmsìi suâj kwàà
   nöönsàw kháw
   Somsri is prettier than
   her younger sister.
   nöönsàw khun sòmsìi suâj
   nööj kwàà khun sòmsìi
   Somsri's younger sister
   is less pretty than
   Somsri.

9. kháw thamnaan màak kwàà
    phôm aathít la hök chúamoöñ
    He works 6 hours a week
    more than I do.
    phôm thamnaan nööj kwàà kháw
    aathít la hök chúamoöñ
    I work 6 hours a week
    less than he does.
10. phīchaaj phōm mii būt māak kwàa phōm mii būt nōi kwàa
    phōm sōn khon
    My older brother has 2 more children than I.
    I have two less children than my older brother.

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. phōm khít wâa, jùu aphāatmèn
diī kwàa
I think living in an apartment is better.

2. phōm khít wâa, pen sòot diī kwàa
I think being single is better.

3. phōm khít wâa, phēn pāj
I think it's too expensive.

4. phōm khít wâa, raw khuan ca bōk khāw
I think we should tell her.

5. phōm khít wâa, raw khuan ca bōk (paj) kōon thīīn
I think we should leave before noon.

6. phōm khít wâa, raw māj khuan sīy rōt khannān
I don't think we should buy the car.

7. phōm khít wâa, khāw khōn maa
I think he will surely come.
o) Expansion Drill

jaññaj
wâa (jañ) ńaj How.
khun wâa jaññaj What do (you) think?
khuñ khít wâa jaññaj What do you think?
khuñ mii khwaam khít hën wâa jaññaj What's your opinion?
khuñ mii khwaam khít hën klaw kàp What's your opinion
ryânnií wâa jaññaj about this matter?
{bân mân}

p) Expansion Drill

Pattern 1
Pattern 2

1. phôm wâa dii phôm wâa dii, khun la khráp,
wâa jaññaj I think it's good. I think it's good. And you,
what do you think?

2. phôm wâa mât khuan phôm wâa mât khuan, khun la khráp,
wâa jaññaj I think you shouldn't. I think you shouldn't. And you,
what do you think?

3. phôm wâa khuan phôm wâa khuan, khun la khráp
wâa jaññaj I think you should. I think you should. And you,
what do you think?

4. phôm wâa mât thùuk phôm wâa mât thùuk, khun la khráp,
wâa jaññaj I think it's not so. I think it's not so. And you?
what do you think?

1(Idiom = 'What are you up to!' [To Intimates or Inferiors])
THAI BASIC COURSE

5.  phöm wâa phæŋ paj
    phöm wâa phæŋ paj, khun la khráp,
    wâa jàŋjaj
    I think it's too expensive.
    I think it's too expensive.  And what do you think?

6.  phöm wâa nâabýa
    phöm wâa nâabýa, khun lâkhráp,
    wâa jàŋjaj
    I think it's boring.
    I think it's boring.  And you, what do you think?

31.3 EXERCISES

a)  Have students compare various persons and objects in
    terms of certain qualities (good, pretty, etc.).

b)  Compare various activities in terms of convenience,
    pleasure, etc.

c)  One student expresses an opinion and asks another
    student's opinion of the same thing.

d)  One student reports on the loss of some object (watch,
    etc.) A second asks if he has found it.  He indicates
    he has or hasn't.

e)  One student says that he went to look for something or
    someone.  Another asks if he was successful in his
    search.  The first indicates he was (or wasn't).

f)  Two students compare the weather 1) on different days,
    2) in different months, 3) at different times of the
    day, and 4) in different places.

g)  One student asks another about the weather at some other
    place or some other time of the year.

h)  Find out which of 2 things various students prefer.

i)  Find out the extent of superiority of one thing over
    another.
j) Compare the number of hours per day or week various people participate in various activities.

k) One student asks another his opinion on something. The second gives it.

l) One student asks another what he is thinking about at the moment.

m) One student asks another if he thinks he should do one thing or the other. The second gives his opinion.

31.4 VOCABULARY

aphá atmén (lǎŋ) apartments
bâanchâw (lǎŋ) a house to rent
cée to meet with unexpectedly
châw to rent
(hǎa) dâj to get. (It indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)

{ phóp
hǎa { cée

to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)

hǎaj (paj) to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
jâak to be difficult
khâacâan wage, wages, pay
khamooj thief, robber
khwaamcinŋ truthfully, actually
khwaamkhíthēn opinion
klaw kâp about
klua to be afraid of
kwàa more than, to a greater extent
lǎŋ classifier for houses and buildings
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Thai Word(s)</th>
<th>Thai Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man / bān</td>
<td>some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōoj</td>
<td>to be little, small, less, slight (in quantity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plō otphaej</td>
<td>to be safe, out of danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plyn</td>
<td>to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadûak</td>
<td>to be convenient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samùt thoorasàp (lêm)</td>
<td>a phone book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sathānthīi (nèn)</td>
<td>place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīa</td>
<td>to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sòot</td>
<td>to be single, unmarried state</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(khon) sòot</td>
<td>single person, bachelor, spinster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tua phôm eeŋ</td>
<td>I (myself)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... kháw eeŋ</td>
<td>he (himself)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... raw eeŋ</td>
<td>we (ourself), more emphatic than 'tua' alone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wâa</td>
<td>to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON THIRTY-TWO

32.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (2)

A: khun dâj bâanchâw lêsw rýjan  Have you got a house
to rent yet?
B: jaŋ khrâp  Not yet.

A: naj sooŋ bâan phôm mii bâan  On my lane there's a
wâaŋ hâj châw jùu lânnyn  house for rent.
B: khâw khît khâachâw jaŋŋaj khrâp  How much is the rent?

A: phôm mâj dâj thâam raaj la-īat  I didn't ask the details.
pen bâanmâj  It's a new house.
nâajùu dii  It's cozy.
sâmrâp khrîopkhrua léklék  For a small family like
jâañ khun, khânàat kamlaŋ  yours the size is just
phoodi, mâj lék mâj jâ  right, not too small,
keen paj  not too big.

B: jùu klaj càak thanñn jàj mây  Is it far from the main
khrâp  street?

A: jùu hâaŋ càak pàak sooŋ raaw  It's around 2 kilometers
raaw sôon kiloo kwâa khrâp  or so from the end of
B: phôm ca tîtto ka càwkhšon-  the lane.
bâan dâj jaŋŋaj  How do I get in touch

A: thoo paj thâam khâw doojtron  Call him directly.
khrâp.mâj tâon phàan naajnâa  You don't have to go
B: bâan khâw thoorasàp bëe araŋ  through the agent.
A: bëe kâaw hôk thoo sàam sli hôk  What's his home phone
962-346
32.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) The stative verb **dii** occurs in several different types of constructions with different meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X + dii</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Meaning of dii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Animate (Human)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. People in general</td>
<td>khon dii</td>
<td>good moral character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. People in special roles</td>
<td>khruu thī dii¹</td>
<td>good at doing something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Inanimate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Objects</td>
<td>tō dii</td>
<td>good quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Places</td>
<td>krunthēep dii²</td>
<td>good for some special purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Action verbs</td>
<td>khāw rian dii</td>
<td>well, efficiently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Stative verbs</td>
<td>jāj dii</td>
<td>nice and (big)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Sentences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Questions</td>
<td>tham araj dii</td>
<td>to be acceptable, all right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When used with nouns indicating family roles (son, etc.), professional roles (teacher, etc.), **thī dii** is used to indicate that the person is performing well in that particular role without regard to his moral character.

2. This type of construction can only be used when it is clear from the context in what respect a place can be called 'good'.
b) *mii ... jùu* calls attention to the fact that a certain thing is in existence at a particular time or place. Its existence may be temporary or accidental.

_toon nán phó̀m mii pées jùu raaw hāaslp bàat thāwnán_

At that time I had only about fifty baht (on me).

_tron pàak sòoj mii râankaafes jùu râan nyû_

Right at the end of the lane there is (located) a coffee shop.

c) *khít jânnaj* means 'how is it figured?' (what is included in the calculations!)

_kháw khít khâachâw jânnaj khráp_

'How is the rent figured? (What's included in the rent?)'

_khít thâwraj* means 'How much does it amount to?';

_kháw khít khâachâw thâwraj*, 'How much is the rent!'.

d) *nàa* is a verb meaning 'worthy of, leading to, or able' which combines with other verbs to form verb compounds:

_nàarâk* 'loveable, cute; nàa 'worthy of' + râk 'love'

_nàachâj* 'nice to use'; nàa 'nice' + châj 'to use'

_nàadûuu* 'interesting to look at'; nàa 'interesting' + duu 'look at'

e) *tít tồo kàp* means 'to contact or get in touch with' someone.

_phöm ca tít tồo ka cāwkhôch bàan dâj jânnaj_

'How do I get in touch with the owner of the house?'

f) *hànn* means 'to be separated by a certain distance'. It is limited to use in sentences referring to the extent of the distance between two points.
bān lāpnān jùu hàañ cāak thanūn jāj 2 kiloo

'That house is 2 kilometers from the main street'.

klaj 'to be far' can replace hàañ in constructions like the one above and can be used in other construction in which hàañ can not be used, as follows:

Q: krunthēep jùu klaj cāak thīnu máj

'Is Bangkok far from here?'

A: màj klaj màak khrāp 'Not very far.'

Or in sentences where klaj is used with verbs of action:
khaù tīi lùuk klaj màak 'He hit the ball very far.'

32.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Besides the verbs maa (towards the speaker) and pāj (away from the speaker) thooorasāp may be followed by other words.

Observe the following examples:

(a) Calling a place

phām thoo(rasāp) { pāj
maa + thīi + PLACE

'I telephoned the... (Place).' 

(b) Calling a person

phām thoo(rasāp) { pāj
maa + { hǎa
thīn + PERSON

'I called (PERSON) up.'
Both when calling persons and places other action verbs with *thoo* may occur. Observe the following:

- *thảm kháw wâa* .... 'I called to ask him...'
- *bôok kháw wâa* .... 'I called to tell him...'
- *chuan kháw paj* .... 'I called to invite him to go'
- *thảm thîi+ Place..* 'I called to ask at the ...'

32.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- bân wâan hâj châw A house for rent.
- nánsûy hâj àan A book to read.
- náam hâj dûym Water to drink.
- aahän hâj thaan Food to eat.
- nàŋ hâj duu A movie to see.
- thîi hâj phák A place to {stay \( \text{rest} \)}

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

**Cue**

| Naj sooj bân phôm mîi bân wâan hâj châw | jùu lá|mn|yîŋ |
|-----------------------------------------|------|------|
| On my lane there is a house for rent.   |      |      |

1. ráankaafes

| Naj sooj bân phôm mîi ráankaafes jùu ráan nyîŋ |
|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| In my lane there is a coffee shop.           |      |
2.  //=laj raan//=  //=nj ooj baan phom mi raankaafes juu //=laj raan//=  
In the lane I live in there are many coffee shops.

3.  thii paaak sooj //=thii paaak sooj mi raankaafes juu //=laj raan //=  
At the entrance to the lane there are many coffee shops.

4.  raanaahsan //=thii paaak sooj mi raanaahsan juu //=laj raan //=  
At the entrance to the lane there are many restaurants.

5.  raan nyง //=thii paaak sooj mi raanaahsan juu raan nyง //=  
At the entrance to the lane there is a restaurant.

6.  thiiinanh //=thiiinanh mi raanaahsan juu raan nyง //=  
At that place there is a restaurant.

7.  raantatphom dii //=thiiinanh mi raantatphom dii juu raan nyง //=  
There is a good barber shop there.

8.  //=laj raan //=  //=thiiinanh mi raantatphom dii dii juu //=laj raan //=  
There are many good barber shops there.

c) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khaw khit khachaw jannaj</td>
<td>How do they figure the rent?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thawraj</td>
<td>khaw khit khachaw thawraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much do they charge for the rent?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

2. dyan la thâwraj khâw khít khâachâw dyan la thâwraj
   How much do they charge per month
   for the rent?

3. dyan la kli phan khâw khít khâachâw dyan la kli phan bâat
   bâat How many thousands a month do they
   charge for rent?

4. pîi la thâwraj khâw khít khâachâw pîî la thâwraj
   How much a year do they charge for
   the rent?

5. aathît la kli khâw khít khâachâw aathît la kli bâat
   bâat How many baht a week do they charge
   for rent?

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. bân nán pen bân m̀aj That house is a new house.
2. krûnthêep pen myân jàj Bangkok is a big city.
3. thîi myânthaj, ëęppên pen khòon Apples are expensive in
   pheǹ Thailand
4. myânthaj pen myân rôon Thailand is a hot country.
5. sawidden pen myân nâaw Sweden is a cold country.
6. sukhopthaj pen myanlûan kàw Sukhothai is the old capitol.

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khâw pen khon dîi He's a nice person.
2. khâw pen khon sanûk He's an enjoyable person.
3. khâw pen khon kên He's a competent person.
4. khâw pen khon màj He's a newcomer.

559
5. kháw pen khon sǔaj
   She's a pretty girl.
6. kháw pen khon nāabỳa
   He's a boring person.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw pen sǎamìì thìì diì
   He's a good husband.
2. kháw pen phanrajaa thìì diì
   She's a good wife.
3. kháw pen lûuchaaì thìì diì
   He's a good son.
4. kháw pen khruu thìì diì
   He's a good teacher.
5. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan thìì diì
   He's a good government official.
6. kháw pen naaj thìì diì
   He's a good boss.
7. kháw pen lûuknòon thìì diì
   He's a good subordinate (employee).
8. kháw pen nákriàn thìì diì
   She's a good student.

NOTE: Compare kháw pen khon rian kèŋ (has good ability to learn)

kháw pen nákriàn thìì diì (is dutiful)

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. nàajùu diì
   nice and cozy
2. sǔaj diì
   nice and pretty
3. thùuk diì
   nice and cheap
4. klâj diì
   nice and near
5. jen diì
   nice and cool
6. róon diì
   nice and hot
7. rew dìi 
nice and fast
8. lèk dìi 
nice and small
9. jàj dìi 
nice and large
10. sanùk dìi 
nice and amusing

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill
1. róon (këen) paj 
too hot
2. nāaw (këen) paj 
too cold
3. klaj (këen) paj 
too far
4. rew (këen) paj 
too fast
5. cháa (këen) paj 
too slow
6. lèk (këen) paj 
too small
7. jàj (këen) paj 
too big
8. klâj (këen) paj 
too close

1) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1
Pattern 2

1. khâw khâp rôt rew.phôm chôop 
He drives fast. I like that. 
khâw khâp rôt rew dìi 
He drives nice and fast.

2. khâw khâp rôt rew.phôm mât chôop 
He drives fast. I don't like that. 
khâw khâp rôt rew paj 
He drives too fast.

3. khâw phûut cháa.phôm chôop 
He speaks slowly. I like that. 
khâw phûut cháa dìi 
He speaks nice and slow.

4. bânkhun jûu klâj talàat phôm chôop 
Your house is near the market. I like that. 
bânkhun jûu klâj talàat dìi 
Your house is nice and close to the market.
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. บ้าน คุณ อยู่ ใกล้ ตลาด บ้าน คุณ อยู่ ใกล้ ตลาด
    ผัก มัก จะ ชอบ
                ของขวัญ
Your house is near the market. I don't like that. Your house is too close to the market.

6. บ้าน ล่านัน แจ้. ผัก ชึง
    บ้าน ล่านัน แจ้ ดี
    That house is big.
    That house is nice and big.
    I like that.

J) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. หน้าต่าง ถ่าน ผัก ดี มาก เล็ก ผัก แก้ม เพื่อน
    It's the right size, not too small and not too large.

2. ฉันถ่าน ผัก ดี มาก ร้อน ผัก แก้ม เพื่อน
    The weather is just right, not too warm and not too cold.

3. เขาพูด ถ่าน ผัก ดี มาก เล่า เล่า แก้ม เพื่อน
    He speaks at just the right speed, not too fast and not too slow.

4. ราวก่ำบาน ผัก ดี มาก แพง ผัก แก้ม เพื่อน
    The price is just right, not too expensive and not too cheap.

5. ร้าน แม่ ที่นี้ ถ่าน ผัก ดี มาก เล่า เล่า
    We arrived at just the right time, not too early and not too late.
k) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bāan nāajùu</td>
<td>The house is nice to live in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hooten</td>
<td>hooten nāajùu</td>
<td>The hotel is nice to live in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krunthēep</td>
<td>krunthēep nāajùu</td>
<td>Bangkok is nice to live in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myanthaj</td>
<td>myanthaj nāajùu</td>
<td>Thailand is nice to live in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aphāatmēnt</td>
<td>aphāatmēnt nāajùu</td>
<td>The apartment is nice to live in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāançanwāt</td>
<td>tāançanwāt nāajùu</td>
<td>Up country (Thailand) is nice to live in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill** *(nāa+Verb as Modifier)*

1. bāan nāajùu          The house is nice (to live in)
2. aahāan nāathaan      The food looks delicious.
3. rōt khannān nāakhāp  That car is nice to drive.
4. nānsỳy lēmnān nāaān   That book is interesting to read.
5. khōon thənfi nāasỳy   Things here are nice to buy.
6. nān ryānnī nāaduu     This movie is nice to see.
7. bāan lēmnān khāachāw màj pheen, nāachāw That house is not too expensive. It's nice to rent.
8. pāakkaa dāamnī nāachāj This pen is nice to use.
9. nákrian khonnān nāasỳon That student is nice to teach.
10. nānsỳy lēmnī nāasōncaj That book is interesting.
11. lékchâe (khambanjaaj) nâafan The lecture is interesting.
12. dêk khonnân nâarâk The child is lovable (cute, etc.)

m) Transformation Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bânlnânnân suaj</td>
<td>phôm jàak jùu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. rôt khannîi dii</td>
<td>phôm jàak khâp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khôn thîîni thûkdiî</td>
<td>phôm jàak sêy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. bân lnânnân dii</td>
<td>phôm jàak châw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. nákrian khonnân këông</td>
<td>phôm jàak sôn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. nànsêy lènnîi dii</td>
<td>phôm jàak âaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. nànsêy lèmnîi dii</td>
<td>phôm sôncaj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. ดีค์ ขอนนัน ดี
ทุกขขอน ราค ขาว์ ดีค์ ขอนนัน นารัก
That child is loveable.
(cute, etc.)

n)  **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sōn kwāa</td>
<td>บ้าน ล่านนัน จูว่า ห่าน</td>
<td>sōn kiloo kwāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>càak thanôn jàj kîi kiloo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many kilometers is that house from the main street?</td>
<td>More than two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. raaw 2 rīy 3</td>
<td>sathāani rôftaj jùu hāaŋ</td>
<td>raaw sōn rý sàam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>càak (thîi) nîi kîi kiloo</td>
<td>kiloo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many kilometers is the railroad station from here?</td>
<td>About 2 or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. raaw 150</td>
<td>hūahîn jùu hāaŋ càak</td>
<td>raaw rōoj hâasîp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>krunthêep kîi kiloo</td>
<td>kiloo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How far is Huahin from Bangkok?</td>
<td>About 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kilometers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 692</td>
<td>ubon jùu hâaŋ càak</td>
<td>hîk rōoj kâawsîp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>krunthêep kîi kiloo</td>
<td>sōn kiloo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How far is Ubon from Bangkok?</td>
<td>About 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kilometers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 1129</td>
<td>sŏnkhlâa jùu hâaŋ càak</td>
<td>nỳn phan nỳn rōoj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>krunthêep kîi kiloo</td>
<td>jîisîp kâaw kiloo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How far is Songklâ from Bangkok?</td>
<td>1129 kilometers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

565
o) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill** (Use of ติ้ตต่อ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw maa thurá araj</td>
<td>kháw maa ติ้ตต่อ ร่าง บ้านช่วย</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why did he come?</td>
<td>He came to inquire about the house for rent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kháw khuan ca ติ้ตต่อ กระบ์</td>
<td>kháw khuan ca ติ้ตต่อ กระบ์</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who should he contact?</td>
<td>cāwnâathîi khonnán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He should contact that official.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. phôm ca ติ้ตต่อ กระบ์ ข้าว</td>
<td>ติ้ตต่ํอ ผ่าน นาจนำ สิกราญ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How can I get in touch with him?</td>
<td>Contact (him) through the agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Through the man in charge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. phôm ca ติ้ตต่อ กระบ์ ข้าว</td>
<td>ติ้ตต่ํอ ผ่าน ค่าน้าที่่ลิ้น สิกราญ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How can I get in touch with him?</td>
<td>Here is my phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have seen him lately?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phôm ca ติ้ตต่อ กระบ์ ข้าว</td>
<td>plàawkhráp, beethoorasàp phôm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do I get in touch with you?</td>
<td>No, I've been out of touch with him for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have got any letters from him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khun phôp kháw บ้าน ร่ายล้ำ</td>
<td>plàawkhráp, phôm กระบ์ ติ้ตต่ํอ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you seen him lately?</td>
<td>No, I haven't been in touch with him for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kaps kháw maa naan lésw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thoo paj thǎam call and ask
2. thoo paj bōok call and tell
3. thoo paj chuan call and invite
4. thoo paj rǐak call and summon
5. thoo paj hǎa call
6. thoo paj thỳŋ call

q) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns 1 and 2 to form pattern 3.)

Patterns 1 and 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phōm thoo paj hǎa kháw phōm thoo paj thǎam kháw wāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phōm thǎam kháw wāa kháw kháw ca paj máj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj máj I called him. I called and asked if he was going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj máj I asked him whether he was going.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phōm thoo paj hǎa kháw phōm thoo paj bōok kháw wāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phōm bōok kháw wāa phōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phōm paj máj dāj I called him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phōm paj máj dāj I called and told him that I couldn't go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj máj I told him I couldn't go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phōm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw phōm ca thoo paj chuan kháw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phōm ca chuan kháw paj sǐy kh̀əŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐy kh̀əŋ I will call him. I will ask him to go shopping with me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐy kh̀əŋ I will call and ask him to go shopping with me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

567
4. a. พ่อมะ ขา ทอย หาา ขาว์ ฆ่ยม ขา ทอย ผัก ขาว์ ฆ่ยม
   พ่อมะ ขา ผัก ขาว์ ฆ่ยม
   พ่อมะ ขา ทิ้ว
   I will call him. I will invite him to go out (for fun).
   I will call and invite him to go out (for fun).

5. a. ฆ่ยม ขา ทอย หาา ขาว์ ฆ่ยม ขา ทอย ผัก บอก หาา ขาว์
   ฆ่ยม ขา ผัก ขาว์ ม้า ทิ้นิ
   I will call him. I will tell him to come over.
   I will call and tell him to come over.

6. a. ฆ่ยม ขา ทอย หาา ขาว์ ฆ่ยม ขา ทอย ผัก ἶำด ขาว์
   ฆ่ยม ขา ผัก 琎ำด .SQLite3
   ฆ่ยม บันช่ำว
   I will call him. I will ask him about the house for rent.
   I will call and ask him about the house for rent.

7. a. ฆ่ยม ขา ทิ้ว บ็อริส่ำต์ ฆ่ยม ขา ริ้ก ทึกส่ำต์
   ฆ่ยม ขา ทึกส่ำต์
   I called the taxi company. I called for a cab.
   I asked for a cab.

8. a. ขาว์ ขาว์ ม้า หาา ฆ่ยม ฆ่ยม ขาว์ ม้า ทึกส่ำต์ ว่าำ ฆ่ยม
   ขาว์ ขาว์ ม้า ทึกส่ำต์ ว่าำ ฆ่ยม
c a p a j ใยำะจี
   He called me. He asked me when I was leaving.
   I called and asked when I was leaving.
THAI BASIC COURSE

9. a. kháw thoo maa hâa phŏm  
   b. kháw bŏok phŏm wâa kháw mâj sabaaj

   kháw thoo maa bŏok (phŏm) wâa mâj sabaaj

   He called me. He told me he was sick.

10. a. kháw thoo maa hâa phŏm  
   b. kháw chuan phŏm paj phátthajaa

   kháw thoo maa chuan phŏm paj phátthajaa

   He called me. He invited me to go to Pataya.

32.4 EXERCISES

1. Ask someone if he has rented a house yet. He indicates he hasn't.

2. Ask if there are any houses for rent in his street. He says there are some.

3. Find out the name of someone's landlord.

4. Find out how much the rent is.

5. Comment on the looks of various buildings in the neighborhood. Indicate that they look nice.

6. Discuss how far apart various buildings in the neighborhood are.

7. Ask someone how you get in touch with someone else. He says call him directly.

8. Ask someone if the house he is living in is big enough for a small family like his.

9. Find out how much the rent is for different houses and apartments, how many hundreds, thousands, etc. per week, month, year.

569
10. Discuss the weather in various seasons at various places.

11. Discuss the manner in which various activities are done and whether you like the way it's done.

12. Indicate that something is just right, not too... or too...

13. Ask questions and answer them about places that are nice to live in, things that are nice to eat, etc.

14. Discuss various telephone calls; who made them to whom for what purpose and at what time.

32.5 VOCABULARY

éxpēn (lūuk, phōn, bāj) apple
cawkhrōŋ owner
cañwāathî (khon) the man in charge, official
doojtron directly
hànŋ to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
kamlāŋ phoodi just right
kēen paj too..., in excess
khâachâw the rent
khāmbanjaaj (khōo) lecture
khan¸at size
khít jannaaj how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)

kiloo kilometer
lékchēe (khōo) lecture
lūuknōŋ (khon) subordinate (employee)
maa thỳŋ to arrive (towards speaker)
paj thỳŋ to arrive (away from speaker)
mii..... jùu has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
nâa worthy of, leading to, or - able, It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds
nâa-àan interesting to read
nâabỳa boring
nâacháj nice to use
nâachâw nice to rent
nâaduu interesting to look at
nâafaŋ interesting to listen to
nâajùu to be cozy, livable
nâakhàp nice to drive
nâarâk lovable, cute
nâasdýy nice to buy
nâasñcaj interesting
nâasñon nice to teach
nâathaan to look delicious
naajñaa (khon) agent
pàak (pàak) mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaksooj the entrance into a lane
raaj la-lat details
rák to love
sooj lane, narrow street
tltto / kàp to contact or get in touch with someone
/ kan / ka-
thoo (rasàp) to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) paj
.... (rasàp) maa
LESSON THIRTY-THREE

33.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (3)

A: phóm dâjjin wâa khun mîi bân hâj châw, châj máj khráp

B: khâ, mîi jùw lâaj láøŋ . khun tôñkaan bêep nâj. chán diaw, sâøŋ chán rỳ chán khryûŋ

A: phóm jàak dâj bân thîi mîi hûmûoøn sâøm hûŋ lësw kî mîi mûñûat thán lâøŋ ca pen sâøŋ chán rỳ chán khryûŋ kî dâj

B: khun chôp bân tỳk rỳ máaj khá

A: arâj kâdâj khráp

B: dichán mîi bân sâøŋ chán khryûŋ tỳk khryûŋ máaj jùu lâøŋ nyû

pen bân bêep sâmûj màj khâññûok thaa sîi khûaw sôn, khâññaj sîi khûaw chán bon mîi hûmûoøn sâøm hûŋ, hûmûm nûŋ hûŋ chán lâøŋ mîi hûnâpûkûñk, hûnkhrûa, hûnâahûan ka hûmûm lîk hûŋ nyû

I heard you had a house to rent, is that true?

Yes, I have several. What kind do you want? One story, two story, or one and a half story.

I want a house with 3 bedrooms and completely screened in. Either two story or one and a half story is O.K.

You want a masonry house or a wooden house?

Either is O.K.

I have a two story house half masonry and half wood.

It's a modern style house.

Outside it's light green; inside it's white.

Upstairs there are 3 bedrooms and one bath.

Downstairs there is a living room, kitchen, dining room, and another bathroom.
lèewkɔ̄, lāŋ bāan mii ryan
khoncháj ka hɔŋkèpkhɔŋ
jùu tàan hàak

And in the back of the house there are separate servant quarters and storage space.

A: mii roongrót máj khráp
B: mii khâ

Is there a carport?
Yes, there is.

33.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) When kɔ dâj follows Noun+nâj, it indicates that either of two or more of the options is acceptable.

A: phôm khuan ca paj bāan
khun weelaa nâj

What time of day should I go to your house?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{weelaa cháaw dâj} \quad & \text{'Morning is O.K.'} \\
\text{weelaa thian dâj} \quad & \text{'Noon is O.K.'} \\
\text{weelaa klaañkhyyn dâj} \quad & \text{'Nighttime is O.K.'} \\
\text{weelaa .... dâj} \quad & \text{....}
\end{align*}
\]

'Any time is all right.'

B. weelaa nâj kɔ dâj

A: raw ca kin khâaw thīi ráan
nâj kan

'Which restaurant shall we eat at?'

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ráan níi dâj} \quad & \text{'This restaurant is O.K.'} \\
\text{ráan nán dâj} \quad & \text{'That restaurant is O.K.'} \\
\text{ráan nóon dâj} \quad & \text{'The restaurant over there is O.K.'}
\end{align*}
\]

'Any one is all right!'

b) jàak and jàak dâj both mean 'want' or 'would like', but they are used differently.
jàak is usually followed by a Verb Phrase and only rarely by a Noun Phrase, whereas, jàak dâj is normally followed by a Noun Phrase. Observe the following examples:

Subject + Verb + Complement (Verb Phrase)

(1) phŏm jàak paj
    I want to go

(2) phom jàak paj jùu tāncañwât
    I want to go and live in the provinces.

Subject + Verb + Complement (Noun Phrase)

(1) phŏm jàak dâj bāan
    I want a house.

(2) phŏm jàak dâj bāan thī mīi sŏng hûnnoon
    I want a house with two bedrooms.

c) Following are two of the ways that Noun Compounds may be formed in Thai:

(1) Noun Compound: Noun + Verb Phrase

hãnrápkhèsêk 'living room': hên 'room' + ráp 'receive' + khêsêk 'guest'
hûnnoon 'bedroom': hên + noon 'sleep'
hânkêpkhèsêk 'storeroom': hên + kêp 'store' + khèsêk 'things'
hûnthaankindhâaw 'dining room': hên + than 'eat' + khâaw 'rice'

(2) Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

hênnaahân 'dining room': hên + aaahân 'food'
hên khrua 'kitchen': hên + khrua 'kitchen'
roonrót 'carport'; roon 'building' + rót 'vehicle'
suan döokmaaj 'flower garden'; suan 'garden'
döokmaaj 'flower'
sanđam (jâa) 'lawn, yard'; sanđam 'yard, field' + jâa 'grass'

Observe the following compounds with bêsp 'model, type, style':

bāan bêsp thaj a Thai style house
bāan bêsp farâŋ a Western style house
bāan bêsp samâj màj a new style house
bāan bêsp than samâj a modern style house
bāan bêsp chán diaw a one story house
bāan bêsp sôn chán a two story house
bāan bêsp chânkhrûŋ a storey and a half house

33.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

I. The following words and phrases are used with houses:

mûn 'mosquito net'
mûnlûat 'screen' (for window, etc.)
mîî mûnlûat 'to be screened'
mîî mûnlûat thân lân 'to be completely screened'

2. The following are some of the color words in Thai:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic color</th>
<th>Light color</th>
<th>Dark color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>sïi khîaw ċôn</td>
<td>sïi khîaw kâê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>sïi lîâŋ ċôn</td>
<td>sïi lîâŋ kâê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>sïi dëñ ċôn</td>
<td>sïi dëñ kâê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>sïi nâtmaan ċôn</td>
<td>sïi nâtmaan kâê</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
blue  sýi námñeen  sýi fáa  sýi námñeen khêm
navy blue  sýi krommathâa  krommathâa
white  sýi khãaw  ... ...  ... ...  
black  sýi dam  ... ...  ... ...  

33.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Question    Response
1. khun chɔɔp bâan tyk rý bâan máaj    araj kɔdâj
   Do you like stucco houses or
   wood houses?    Either.
2. khun chɔɔp bâan bɛsp náj    bɛsp náj kɔdâj
   What kind of house do you prefer?
   Any kind.
3. khun jàak jùu thîinäj    thîinäj kɔdâj
   Where would you like to live?
   Anywhere.
4. khun jàak pen araj (mɔɔ, thahãan, etc)    pen araj kɔdâj
   What would you like to be?
   (doctor, etc.)    (Any occupation)
   is fine.
5. raw ca paj kan weelaa náj    weelaa náj kɔdâj
   What time are we going?
   Any time is all
   right.
6. chalêm pen chỹy phûuchaaaj rý
   phûujîŋ    chỹy phûuchaaaj kɔdâj
   Is 'Chalerm' a man's name
   or a woman's name?    chỹy phûujîŋ kɔdâj
   It could be either
   a man's name or a
   woman's name.
b) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ca pen sɔɔŋ chán rý chán dìaw kɔdɔj</td>
<td>Either a two story or one story one is O.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj rý máj paj kɔdɔj</td>
<td>It doesn't matter whether we go or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca tham dìawníi rý lik sàk pradỳaw kɔdɔj</td>
<td>It doesn't make any difference whether you do it now or a little later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca hâj phɔm khoɔj jùu thîiníi, thîinóon</td>
<td>It's all right with me whether you have me wait here or there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca pen bân tỳk, bân máaŋ</td>
<td>Either a stucco or wooden house is O.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca pen khon thaj rý khon tàaŋchâat kɔdɔj</td>
<td>It could be either a Thai or a foreigner.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. บ้านที่มีมุมลู่ที่</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้บ้านที่มีมุมลู่ที่</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. บ้านสองชั้น</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้บ้านสองชั้น</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. บ้านบ่ระทั้จ</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้บ้านบ่ระทั้จ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. รถมาจ</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้รถมาจ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ผังซิยล่มแผน</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้ผังซิยล่มแผน</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ผังที่มีแผนที่</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้ผังที่มีแผนที่ แผนที่ผ่าแผน</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. แผนแมกผัก</td>
<td>ภูมิจ่ากใต้แผนแมกผัก</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fāa</td>
<td>bān khun (thaa) sīi araj</td>
<td>sīi fāa khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color is your house?</td>
<td>Light blue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dam</td>
<td>rót khan màj khōn khun sīi araj</td>
<td>sīi dam khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color is your new car?</td>
<td>Black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khāw</td>
<td>khānghok bān khun thaa sīi araj</td>
<td>sīi khāw khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color is your house on the outside?</td>
<td>White.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. lṭa ṭon</td>
<td>sṭa khōn kháw sīi araj</td>
<td>sīi lṭa ṭon khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color is his coat?</td>
<td>Light yellow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. nāmtaan kēs</td>
<td>roontháw khū nán sīi araj</td>
<td>sīi nāmtaan kēs khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color is that pair of shoes?</td>
<td>Dark brown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transformation Drill

(Form pattern 3 from Patterns 1 and 2.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1 and 2</th>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bān kháw sīi khāw</td>
<td>bān kháw sīi kēs kwāa bān phōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bān phōm sīi khāw ṭon</td>
<td>phōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His house is green.</td>
<td>His house is a darker color than mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My house is light green.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. kāwfi hōŋ khun praphāt sīi lỳãŋkèes
   The chairs in Prapas' room are dark yellow.

   kāwfi hōŋ khun prasèet sīi lỳaŋbōn
   The chairs in Prasert's room are light yellow.

3. rōt khan nān sīi dēŋ
   That car is red; this car is light red.

   rōt khan nān sīi kēe kwāa
   That car is darker colored than this one.

4. sīa chūt nān sīi nāmingleton
   That suit is blue.
   This suit is light blue.

   sīa chūt nān kēe kwāa sīa chūt nīi
   That suit is darker than this one.

5. roonthāw khūu nān sīi nāmtaang kēe
   That pair of shoes is dark brown.

   roonthāw khūu nīi sīi nāmtaang bōn
   That pair of shoes is lighter brown.

   roonthāw khūu nān sīi kēe kwāa roonthāw khūu nīi
   That pair of shoes is darker in color than this pair.

6. phṃm chīop sīi kromathāa
   I like navy blue.

   khāw chīop sīi fāa
   He likes light blue.

   phṃm chīop sīi kēe kwāa
   I like darker colors than he.

Repeat this drill reversing subject and complement and using bōn kwāa in place of kēe kwāa.
f) *Expansion Drill*

1. mii bān
   mii bān wān
   mii bān wān hāj chāw
   mii bān bēep thaj wān hāj chāw
   mii bān bēep thaj wān hāj chāw jūu
   mii bān bēep thaj than samāj wān hāj chāw jūu
   mii bān bēep thaj chān diaw than samāj wān hāj chāw jūu
   lān nyē

2. phōm jàak dāj bān
   phōm jàak dāj bān tỳk
   phōm jàak dāj bān tỳk thaa sī1 kʰrlw
   phōm jàak dāj bān tỳk thaa sī1 kʰrlw oön
   phōm jàak dāj bān tỳk thaa sī1 kʰrlw oön thī1 mīi mūnlūat
   phōm jàak dāj bān tỳk thaa sī1 kʰrlw oön thī1 mīi mūnlūat thānlān

3. khāw chōop bān
   khāw chōop bān māaj
   khāw chōop bān māaj bēep farān
   khāw chōop bān māaj bēep farān chān diaw
   khāw chōop bān māaj bēep farān chān diaw thī1 mīi hōnnām
   khāw chōop bān māaj bēep farān chān diaw thī1 mīi hōnnām bēep than samāj

581
4. pen bāan
pen bāan bēs p samāj kāw
pen bāan bēs p samāj kāw sān čhān
pen bāan bēs p samāj kāw sān čhān khāmnīk thaa sīi deęń
pen bāan bēs p samāj kāw sān čhān khāmnīk thaa sīi deęń, khāmnaj sīi khāaw
pen bāan bēs p samāj kāw 2 čhān khāmnīk thaa sīi deęń, khāmnaj sīi khāaw làŋ nyń

g) Response Drill (Use kō dāj in the response.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun jāak jùu kruŋthēep rý tānańcāńwāt</td>
<td>thīnāj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. wanníi raw ca pāj thaań khāaw thīnāj dīı</td>
<td>thīnāj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun jāak hāj lūuk khun rian araj</td>
<td>araj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun ca hāj phōm pāj tōon nāj</td>
<td>tōon nāj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phōm khuan ca hāj araj khāw dīı</td>
<td>araj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ṇaań nīi ca tōoŋ sēt mỳaraj</td>
<td>mỳaraj kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. khun ca phūt ka khrajang</td>
<td>khrajang kō dāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. khun jāak hāj khrajang pāj dūaj</td>
<td>khrajang kō dāj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

33.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out if someone has a house to rent. He indicates that he has several, and asks you if you want a single story house. You say you want a two story house.

b) Tell someone that you have a masonry house that is completely screened in. Ask him if he wants to rent it. He says he doesn't.
c) Ask someone if he has a half masonry and half wood house to rent. He says he has two. You ask him where they are. He says they are on Sukhumvit Lane.

d) Ask the teacher whether most Thais live in modern style houses or old style, Thai or foreign.

e) Tell someone you have a house to rent. He asks you what color it is. You say it's white on the outside and light green on the inside.

f) Describe the house you are now living in terms of: 1) number of storeys 2) material it is made out of, 3) the color it is painted inside and out, 4) what rooms it has and whether they are upstairs or down, 5) whether it has servants' quarters, storage space, a carport, flower garden, and a yard.

g) Various students ask about the colors of various objects in the classroom, other students respond with the correct answers.

h) One student asks another questions of the following kind: 'Do you like .... or ....?' to which the response 'Any (kind, thing, where, etc.)' is given.

i) One student asks another what kind of... he wants. The second responds with a description of the kind he wants.

33.5 VOCABULARY

ดอน light (color)

บ้านไม้ (ล่าง) a wooden house

บ้านเทอร์ลี่ (ล่าง) a stucco home, brick house (building)

บัง bësp model, type, style

ชาน patio, porch without a roof

ชานย่าง (ชานย่าง) terrace, balcony, porch

ชานبون upstairs

ชันดีแลว one story
chánkhryñŋ  one and a half storey
chánlânn  downstairs
(sỳî) dam  black
(sỳî) deën  red
dâjjin  to hear
dòokmáaj (dòok)  flowers
fáa (sỳî fáa)  sky, sky blue
hâŋpàahñan (hâñ)  dining room
hâŋkèphkhön (hâñ)  storage, space, storage room
hâŋkrhrua (hâñ)  kitchen
hâŋnám (hâñ)  bathroom, restroom
hâŋráhkhesk (hâñ)  a living room
jàa  grass
këe  dark (color)
khâaw  white
khîaw  green
khîawñón  light green
khûu  pair
kromathâa  navy blue, dark blue
lỳân  yellow
máaj (an, phèen)  wood, stick
mùñ (làñ)  mosquito net
mùñlùat  screen (for window etc.)
(sỳî) nàmñean  blue
(sỳî) nàmtaan  sugar, brown (as color)
râbiâñ  corridor
roônrôt (roon)  garage
roônthâw (khûu, khâan)  shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ryan (làñ)  house (in older Thai)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ryankhoncháj</td>
<td>servants' quarters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samǎj</td>
<td>time, period, era, age, reign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samǎj mǎj</td>
<td>modern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanǎam (jâa)</td>
<td>lawn, yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanǎam (sanǎam)</td>
<td>yard, field, (golf) course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐi (sǐi)</td>
<td>color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǒńchán</td>
<td>two story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǔan (sǔan)</td>
<td>garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǔan dìookmáaj</td>
<td>flower garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jùu) tàaǹhàak</td>
<td>to be separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thaa (sǐi)</td>
<td>to paint, smear, spread (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than samǎj</td>
<td>modern, up-to-date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tlt (mùnílùat)</td>
<td>to be screened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǒŋkaan</td>
<td>to want, need</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

34.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (4)

A: pen jaŋnaj māŋ khābān lāŋ nī
   khun chāop māj
How is this house?

B: sabaaj māk khrāp, booriween
    kõ kwāan khwāan dīi
    khōthōot, khun khīt khāachāw
    jaŋnaj khrāp
Do you like it?

Very nice. The compound is also nice and large.

Excuse me, how much is the rent?

A: dyan la hāaphan bāat.māj
    ruam khāanám, khāafaj,
    khāakēss, lé khāathoorasāp
    phūuchāw tēŋ sīa een
5000 baht a month.
Not including water, electricity, gas, and telephone.
The tenant has to pay those himself.

B: dyan la hāaphan chiaw rē khrāp
    lōt bāaŋ dāj māj khrāp
Five thousand baht!?
Could you come down some?

A: hāa phan māj phēŋ rokhā
    phrö mīi khṛyāŋryan phröom
5,000 is not too expensive since it's furnished.

B: mīi araŋ bāaŋ khrāp
What (furnishings) are there?

A: mīi khrōp thūk jāaŋ:
    chūt rāpkhēk, chūt thaankhāaw,
    tiaŋ, tūu, tawkēss, tūujen lé
    phātlom . khāat tēs khṛyāŋ
    prāpaakāat
Everything: living room furniture, a dining set,
beds, chests of drawers, a gas stove, a refrigerator,
and electric fans. The only thing it doesn't have is air
conditioning.
A: khun t*n aw maa een t*e
t* oot*n h*aj frii
You have to bring your own.
But we'll have it installed
for you free.

B: t*n tham s*anjaach*aw kli
pi* khr*ap
How long a lease is
required?

A: n*y pi* kh*
c*aj n*n l*uann*aa jaann*0oj
s*am dyan
khooth*ot, khun ca jaaj maa
j*uu myaraj kh*
One year.
(Pay) 3 months rent in
advance.

B: ph*om kho pr*yks*aa phanrajaaa
ph*om k*0on
th*a t*oklo*n, ca jaaj maa
dyan n*aa
I'd like to talk it over
with my wife first.

If we take it, we'll move
in next month.

34.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) s*aa, b*ok, and c*aj

s*aa (kh*a) means 'to pay for something (a bill, etc.)'
as an obligation for services rendered.
b*ok (n*n) means 'to pay for something, put up the
money for something, or to stand good for something.'
c*aj (n*n) means 'to pay out, spend, disburse money'.
It refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a
specific occasion.

The example below illustrates the usage of s*aa, b*ok,
and c*aj:

khun coon k*ap khun cim ch*aw b*aan j*u d*ajkan. kh*aw s*aa
kh*ach*aw dyan la 4000 b*aat. khun coon b*ok 2000 b*aat .
khun cim b*ok 2000 b*aat. kh*aw c*aj kh*ach*awb*aan dyan
la khr*ap
John and Jim rent a house. The cost of the rent is 4000 baht a month. John pays out 2000 and Jim pays out 2000. They make the rent payment once a month.

b) khróp means 'to be complete' or 'to include all the members of a limited set of items'. Its opposite is kháat 'to be lacking, missing'. khróp like sét usually occurs as a completive verb, as in

kháw dâj nánsýy khróp thúk lêm He got all the books.
(nánsýy mì jùu 20 lêm. kháw (There were 20 books.
dâj nánsýy 20 lêm.) He got 20.)

However, it can occur independently, as in

A: nánsýy khróp máj Are all the books here?

B: máj khróp, kháat paj sôn No, two are missing.
lêm

c) When chiaw occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.

hâaphan bâat chiaw rê Five thousand baht!? (That's quite a lot of money.)

34.2 VOCABULARY NOTES  (The following are some of the compounds with khâa 'cost, price, fee, value' as the head noun.)

Noun: Noun+Noun
khâafaj (fâa) 'electric bill': khâa+faj (fâa) 'electricity'
khâanám 'water bill': khâa+nám 'water'
khâakês 'gas bill': khâa+kês 'gas'
khâarôt 'carfare': khâa+rôt 'car, vehicle'
khâa aahân 'food (on a bill)': khâa+aahân 'food'
khâam$mô 'doctor bill': khâa+m$mô 'doctor'
THAI BASIC COURSE

Noun: Noun+Verb Phrase
khâacâañ 'wage': khâa+câañ 'hire'
khâachâw 'rent': khâa+châw 'rent'
khâakin 'food': khâa+kin 'eat'
khâajùu 'lodging': khâa+jùu 'reside'
khâathoorasàp 'phone bill': khâa+thoorasàp 'telephone'
khâadeenthaan 'travel expenses': khâa+deenthaan 'travel'

34.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khâanám, màj</td>
<td>ruam khâanám màj</td>
<td>màj ruam khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does it include the water bill?</td>
<td>No, it doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khâakéss</td>
<td>ruam khâakéss màj</td>
<td>ruam khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does it include the gas bill?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khâafaj, màj</td>
<td>ruam khâafaj màj</td>
<td>màj ruam khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does it include the electric bill?</td>
<td>No, it doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khâathoorasàp</td>
<td>ruam khâathoorasàp màj</td>
<td>ruam khráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does it include the phone bill?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tən sęa khācanām een</td>
<td>You have to pay the water bill yourself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāacān</td>
<td>tən sęa khāacān een</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāamšo</td>
<td>tən sęa khāamšo een</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāadeenthaan</td>
<td>tən sęa khāadeenthaan een</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāajùu</td>
<td>ttən sęa khāajùu een</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. You have to pay the wages yourself.  
2. You have to pay the doctor bill yourself.  
3. You have to pay travel expenses yourself.  
4. You have to pay for lodging yourself. 

c) **Transformation Drill** (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khāw chāw bāan dyan la sāam phan bāat</td>
<td>khāw sęa khāa chāwbāan dyan la 3000 bāat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He rents the house for 3000 baht a month.</td>
<td>He pays 3000 baht a month for rent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khāw cân khonchāj dyan la hàa rócj bāat</td>
<td>khāw sęa khāacān khonchāj dyan la 500 bāat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He hires a servant for 500 baht a month.</td>
<td>He pays 500 baht a month for a servant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. kháw cháj fajfáa dyan la slí róoj bäat
   He uses 400 baht worth of electricity per month.

4. kháw cháj kées dyan la róoj bäat
   He uses 100 baht worth of gas per month.

5. kháw sýy aahāan dyan la phan bäat
   He buys 1000 baht worth of food per month.

6. kháw hâj ñen khonkhàp thékèsī sl̩p bäat
   He gave the taxi driver ten baht.

   d) Sentence Expansion Drill

1. raw mâj tôn sýa khâachâwbâan een. thaantrâatchakaan ñok hâj
   We don't have to pay the rent.

2. raw mâj tôn sýa khâadaenthaan een
   We don't have to pay for travel expenses.
3. raw māj tēn sīa khāamūo een
   We don't have to pay doctor bills.

4. khāw māj tēn sīa khāalāwrian
   khōon lūuk een
   He doesn't have to pay for his children's schooling.

5. khāw māj tēn sīa khāarōt een
   thaaŋrāatchakaan bōk hāj
   He doesn't have to pay for transportation.

   e) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 2</td>
<td>khun cāaj khāachāwbāan wanthīi thāwraj</td>
<td>wanthīi sōoŋ khráp thāwraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On what day of the month do you pay the rent?</td>
<td>On what day of the month do you pay the rent?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 15</td>
<td>khun cāaj khāakēes wanthīi thāwraj</td>
<td>wanthīi 15 khráp thāwraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?</td>
<td>On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. 22 khun càaj khânam wan thâwraj
   wanthîi 22 khráp
   What day do you pay the water bill on?
   The twenty second.

4. sûthâaj khun càaj khâathoorasàp wan sûthâaj khráp
   wanthîi thâwraj
   What day do you pay the telephone bill on?
   The last day.

5. dyan la khun càaj khâacâaŋ khoncháj
   dyan la 2 khránj
   2 khránj dyan la kli khránj
   khráp
   How many times a month do you pay your servants?
   Twice a month.

6. dyan la khun càaj khâafaj dyan la kli
   khránj khránj
   dyan la khránj
   How many times a month do you pay the light bill?
   Once a month.

f) **Transformation Drill** (Change from affirmative to negative.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1 (affirmative)</th>
<th>Pattern 2 (Negative)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bânníî mîî khryânryan khróp thûk jàaŋ</td>
<td>bânníî mîî khryânryan mâj khróp (thûk jàaŋ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This house has all kinds of furniture.</td>
<td>This house doesn't have all kinds of furniture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phôm dâj nánsîyy khróp thûk lêm lîsw</td>
<td>phôm dâj nánsîyy jàaŋ mâj khróp (thûk lêm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've got all the books (in a series, etc.)</td>
<td>I haven't got all the books yet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.  phôm tòɔp khamthǣam khróng thúk khêɔ phôm tòɔp khamthǣam māj khróng thúk khêɔ
I answered every single question. I didn't answer all the questions.

4.  phôm dâj nêŋ khróng lêsw phôm dâj nêŋ jän māj khróng
I've already got all the money. I haven't got all the money yet.

5.  phôm thamṇaan (dâj) khróng nỳŋ pī lêsw phôm thamṇaan jän māj khróng (nỳŋ) pī
I've already worked I haven't been working for one year. quite a year yet.

g) Sentence Expansion Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw tîttâŋ khrîyânpâpaakâat hâj frii</td>
<td>kháw tîttâŋ khrîyânpâpaakâat hâj frii. kháw māj khít khāatlîttâŋ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
They installed the air They installed the air conditioner free. They condition free. They didn't charge for installa-
| 2. kháw hâj raw thaan frii | kháw hâj raw thaan frii kháw māj khít { khâa aahån thaan |
They let us eat free. They let us eat free. They didn't charge for the food.
3. kháw hâj phôm jùu frii

They let me stay free.

They didn't charge me for rent (or lodging).

4. kháw thamnâaan hâj phôm frii

He worked for me free.

He didn't charge for labor.

5. kháw sôn nânsûy hâj phôm frii

He taught me free.

He didn't charge any tuition fee.

6. thaanroonriam hâj lûuk khôn

The school let his child study there free.

khwâ rian frii

khít khâa làwriam

h) Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. dyan nāa</td>
<td>kháw ca jâaj maa jùu mûaraj</td>
<td>dyan nāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When will he move in?</td>
<td>Next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dyan mókharaa</td>
<td>kháw ca jâaj maa jùu mûaraj</td>
<td>dyan mókharaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When will he move in?</td>
<td>In January.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. aathít nāa</td>
<td>kháw ca jâaj maa jùu mûaraj</td>
<td>aathít nāa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When will he move in?</td>
<td>Next week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.  wancan thíi  kháw ca jáaj maa jùu  wancan thíi ca thýnníi
    ca thýnníi  mýaraj
    When will be move in?  Monday of next week.

5.  lik 4 wan  kháw ca jáaj maa jùu  lik 4 wan khráp
    mýaraj
    When will he move in?  In 4 days.

6.  wansúk nàa  kháw ca jáaj maa jùu  wansúk nàa
    mýaraj
    When will he move in?  Next Friday.

7.  pii nàa  kháw ca jáaj maa jùu  pii nàa
    mýaraj
    When will be move in?  Next year.

1)  Substitution Drill

Cue          Pattern

kh̄o pry̆ks̄a phanrajaa phôm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my wife first.

1. naaj       kh̄o pry̆ks̄a naaj phôm kòon
              I'd like to talk it over with my boss first.

2. khruu      kh̄o pry̆ks̄a khruu phôm kòon
              I'd like to talk it over with my teacher first.

3. ph̄yan      kh̄o pry̆ks̄a ph̄yan phôm kòon
               I'd like to talk it over with my friend first.

4. lûuks̄aw   kh̄o pry̆ks̄a lûuks̄aw phôm kòon
               I'd like to talk it over with my daughter first.

596
5. น้องช้าจ ข้อง ปฎีกษา น้องช้าจ ภักษ์ ค่อน
   I'd like to talk it over with my younger brother first.

J) **Response Drill**  (Listen to the description of the situation
   and answer the questions.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun coon kàp khun cim chàw bâan jùu dûajkan. khâw sîa khâachâw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun coon òok 2000 bàat. khun cim òok kli bàat</td>
<td>sǒơn phan bàat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phyân 2 khon khâwhûn¹ kan sîy rôtjon rakhaa 80,000 bàat. khon nyû òok 10,000 bàat. lik khon nyû ca òok kli bàat</td>
<td>cêt myyn bàat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun A kàp khun B paj kin aahǎn klaarjwàn dûajkan. thâŋ 2 khon kin aahǎn 50 bàat. khun B mîi nên hâj khun A 20 bàat thâwnàn khun A ca têŋ òok lik kli bàat</td>
<td>sâamsîp bàat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. phanrajaa chuan sâami paj sîy sîa hâj lûuk. rakhaa tua la sâam sîp bàat têñ phanrajaa mîi nên hâa bàat thâwnàn phanrajaa ca hâj sâami òok thâwraj</td>
<td>jîlsîp hâa bàat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khun prasît kàp khun prasàat paj lêñ boolîn, keem la sîp bàat, 6 keem thârmôt 60 bàat. thàñ sǒơn khon ca òok nên khon la kli bàat</td>
<td>sâamsîp bàat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ khâwhûn means 'to team up' or 'to go into partnership'
6. ภัยณ สิ่ง โกลง ร่อต ผจญหัว แหนคฎ่ว้่ต
    สิ่ง เก้า นามมน ร่อต 76 บัว
    ทาน้ สิ่ง โกลง ตัน ตอบ งอน โกลง ล่า คลิ่ง บัว . ศิษฎาภะ บัว

34.4 EXERCISES

a) One student asks another what he pays in rent. When the
   second responds, he asks him what is included in the
   price. If some things are not included, he is asked
   how much they cost. If someone is sharing an apartment
   or house with another, he is asked how much each pays.

b) One student asks another if he is renting a furnished
   house or apartment. If he is, the first asks him what
   is furnished. The second gives him a list.

c) One student asks another (1) how many times a month
   and (2) on what day he must pay the bill for gas,
   electricity, water, rent, and gas.

d) One student asks another when he moved into his present
   apartment or house and when he will move out.

34.5 VOCABULARY

ตอบ (งอน)  to put up the money for, to pay for,
    to stand good for
บุญ             bowling
บอริวิน          compound, area, grounds (around a
                   building), vicinity
ค่าจ้าง (งอน)   pay (refers to the actual expenditure
                   of funds on a specific occasion)
ชุด ราชเทว์ (ชุด) living room furniture
ชุด ทานักษา (ชุด) a dining set
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chiaw</td>
<td>really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deəthnaŋ</td>
<td>to travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frii</td>
<td>to be free (no cost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jāaj { maa + jùu }</td>
<td>to move (in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwâaŋ</td>
<td>to be broad, wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwâaŋ khwâaŋ</td>
<td>to be wide, to be large, to be roomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keem (keem)</td>
<td>game (sports)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâajìu</td>
<td>lodging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâakèes</td>
<td>gas bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâalâwrian</td>
<td>tuition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâarôť</td>
<td>carfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâatìttâŋ</td>
<td>installation fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khàat (tèe)</td>
<td>to be lacking, missing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâw hûn</td>
<td>to team up, to go into partnership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrôp</td>
<td>to be complete (in quantity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to include all the members of a limited set of items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrîyàŋ pràpaakàāt</td>
<td>air conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(khrîyàŋ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khrîyàŋryan (chút)</td>
<td>furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lôt</td>
<td>to reduce (the price), to lower, discount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lûañnâa</td>
<td>in advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phátlom</td>
<td>electric fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phróom</td>
<td>to be ready, set, completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phûuchâw (khon)</td>
<td>tenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prasàat</td>
<td>Prasat, male first name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prỳksãa  to talk it over, consult
ruam  include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
sǎnjaachâw (baj)  a lease
sùtháaj  last, final
sǐa (khâa)  to pay for something (a bill, etc.)
tawkèsś  a gas stove
tìttân  to install
tòkloŋ  to agree (to something)
tûu  chests of drawers, cabinets, (book) cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)  a refrigerator
LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

35.0 REVIEW DIALOGUE:

A: khun dâj bâanchâw rýjaŋ khrâp
B: kamlâŋ hâa jùu khrâp
    khun rûučâk khraj thîi mîi
    bân hôj châw bânôj mây khrâp
A: phôm mîi jâat khon nyû
    khâw bûrk phôm wâa khâw mîi
    bân hôj châw
B: jûu thîinâîj khrâp

Have you found a house to rent yet?
I'm still looking.
Do you know anyone who has a house to rent?

A: jûu thîi thanôn phahônujootihin
    soo thîi 12
    pen bân klaân kàw klaânmây.
    mîi khrua bèsô samšt mây,
    roongrot lêswnô ryan khônchây
B: mîi kîi hônnôn khrâp

I have a relative.
He told me he had a house to rent.

On Phaholyothin Lane 12.
It's not old but it's not new.
With a modern kitchen, 
a carport, and servants' quarters.

A: sâm hônnôn, mîi hônnâm
    2 hônp
B: sooñnân thanôn pen jànnaj
    bânôj khrâp
A: mîi khrâp nám, faj kô
    sadûak, thôorasâp kô mîi

How many bedrooms are there?
Three (and) there are 2 bathrooms.
What's the road like in that 'soi'?

Good. The water and electricity are good. 
There are also telephones (in that area).
B: kháw khít khāachāw jaŋŋaj khráp

What does he charge for rent?

A: dyan la sī phan hāa, māj ruām khāa nāam, khāa faj, khāa thoorasàp lē khāa kées phūu chāw tēŋ sīa een

4,500 per month not including water, electricity, telephone, and gas.
The tenant has to pay those himself.

B: sī phan hāa, māj lōt leej rōkhráp

4500! Any discount at all?

A: kháw bōok phōm wāa lōt dāj bāaŋ nītnōoj thāa khun sōncaj, phōm ca thāam hāj

He told me he could come down a little.

If you're interested, I'll ask him for you.

B: khūockhūn māak khráp khun chūaj tītto hāj dùaj nakhráp dīawnī bāan dīi dīi hāa jāak lỳakeen

Thank you very much.

Please inquire about it for me.

A: khráp, phró bāan mīi nōoj lé mīi khon tēŋkaan chāw māak khỳn khāachāw leej phēŋ khỳn thūk wann

Nowadays it's extremely difficult to find good houses.

Yes, there are few houses and more and more people needing them.

As a result, rents are getting higher everyday.
35.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) A large number of stative verbs may be grouped together as binary sets with opposite meanings, such as ดี: เหลว 'good:bad', etc. If a model like the following is drawn with ascending and descending degrees of 'goodness' and 'badness', it will be observed that the change from one to the other is a gradual thing: (i.e. passing through an infinite number of gradations):

```
+---+   +---+   +---+
| dîi |   | khûn |   | lôn |
|  leew |   |   |  (mâak) |
```

Going from leew towards dîi would be going up (khûn) and going the opposite direction would be going down (lôn).

In this situation dîi khûn 'getting better' indicates that a change is taking place and the direction of the change is towards 'goodness' (upwards). It does not tell us what the situation was (how good or how bad) when the change began or how far it has progressed. A similar situation in reverse is pictured in leew lôn 'getting worse'.

It would be incorrect to read some deep philosophic meaning into the fact that one stative verb occurs with khûn and its opposite with lôn. It is no more significant than the fact that some adjectives occur with 'more' and some with '-er' in the comparative in English. In the following list of binary sets the first member occurs with khûn; the second with lôn:


b) Stative verbs like thuúk, con, etc. that usually occur with loŋ may occur with khýn to indicate an intensification of a situation already in existence. Observe the difference in meaning between con loŋ and con khýn in the following examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. kháw kheej ruaj</td>
<td>kháw con loŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dšawníi kháw mii ɲeɛn nóoj loŋ</td>
<td>He used to be rich.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Now he has less money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kháw con jùu lēɛw</td>
<td>kháw con khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dšawníi kháw con mãak kwàa</td>
<td>He was poor already.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɛɛ kòon</td>
<td>Now he's poorer than before.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k hàachàwbaan phṣen khýn</td>
<td>Rents are going up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. aahāan</td>
<td>aahāan phṣen khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dii</td>
<td>aahāan dii khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thai Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>aakàat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>róon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>sabaaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>phôm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>kháw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>këñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>dìi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>phaasła thaj phôm phôm dìi khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>roonrian khşon roonrian khşon raw dìi khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>jàj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>suaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>phûujîn khonnán phûujîn khonnán suaj khýn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>dìi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16. โพธิ์รู้ค่ะ โพธิ์รู้ค่ะ ขอ โพธิ์รู้ค่ะ ขอ
Kháw díi khýn
I'm getting to know him better and better.

17. โพธิ์ฟุต พาสก้าท่าสรท่าสร dâj
díi khýn
My ability to speak Thai is improving.

18. rew โพธิ์ฟุต พาสก้าท่าสรท่าสร rew
díi khýn
The rate at which I speak Thai is going up.

19. โพธิ์ข่าป์rott โพธิ์ข่าป์rott rew
khýn
I drive faster (than previously).

20. โพธิ์ทามมาน rew ทามมาน rew
khýn
I work faster (than previously).

b) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kháacháwbān thùuk lon̄</td>
<td>The rent is going down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. khññthùuk lon̄ Things are getting cheaper.

2. rót thùuk lon̄ Cars are getting cheaper.

3. cháa rót cháa lon̄ The car is slowing down.

4. kháw khàp rót kháw khàp rót cháa lon̄ He reduced the car's speed.

606
5. jës kháw kháp rôt jës loŋ. His driving is getting worse.

6. roongrian nán roongrian nán jës loŋ That school is getting worse.

7. lék roongrian nán lék loŋ That school is getting smaller.

c) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>džawníi, mìi khor tōŋkaan châw bâan mâak khîn</td>
<td>At present, there is an increasing demand for houses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. raw mìi khruu džawníi, raw mìi khruu mâak khîn | At present, we have more and more teachers. |

2. phôm cháj nèn džawníi, phôm cháj nèn mâak khîn | At present, I spend more and more money. |

3. phôm mìi nèn dżawníi phôm mìi nèn mâak khîn | At present I have more and more money. |

4. phôm phûut džawníi, phôm phûut phâasàa thàj dâj mâak khîn | At present I can speak more and more. |

5. phôm tôŋ sêyy džawníi, phôm tôŋ sêyy aahàan mâak khîn | At present I have to buy more and more food. |
6. phôm thamñaan  dǐawníi, phôm thamñaan māak khûn
   At present I work more and more.

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue                     Pattern

dǐawníi, raw mīi nákrián nócj lón
   At present we have fewer students.

1. khruu             dǐawníi raw mīi khruu nócj lón.
   At present we have fewer teachers.

2. cāwnāathīī kēŋkēn dǐawníi, raw mīi cāwnāathīī kēŋkēn nócj lón
   At present, we have a smaller number
   of competent staff.

3. mō diidiī        dǐawníi, raw mīi mō dii dii nócj lón
   At present we have a lower number
   of good doctors.

4. ēaən tham       dǐawníi, raw mīi ēaən tham nócj lón
   At present we have less work to do.

5. ēn               dǐawníi, raw mīi ēn nócj lón
   At present we have less money.

6. dāj              dǐawníi, raw dāj ēn nócj lón
   At present we earn less money.

7. cháj             dǐawníi, raw cháj ēn nócj lón
   At present we spend less money.
8. sýy khɔŋ  dỳawníi, raw sýy khɔŋ nòoj lɔŋ
   At present we shop less

9. thaan  dỳawníi, raw thaan nòoj lɔŋ
   At present we eat less.

  e) **Transformation Drill** /khɔŋ/ and /lɔŋ/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 1 and 2</th>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. wanníi myawaanníi khâw mâj sabaaj wanníi khâw sabaaj</td>
<td>wanníi (khâw) sabaaj khɔŋ</td>
<td>Yesterday he was not well. Today he is all right. Today he feels better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanníi khâw sabaaj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dỳawníi myakòonníi khâw mâj khâwcaj khon thaj dỳawníi khâw khâwcaj khon thaj dìi</td>
<td>dỳawníi, khâw khâwcaj khon thaj dìi khɔŋ</td>
<td>Now, he understands the Thais better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khon thaj dìi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dỳawníi myakòonníi mìi khon phûut phaasǎa ank znaleźć dàj nòoj dỳawníi, mìi khon phûut phaasǎa ank znaleźć dàj màak</td>
<td>dỳawníi, mìi khon phûut phaasǎa ank znaleźć dàj màak khɔŋ</td>
<td>Formerly, there were a few people who could speak English. Now, there are more and more people who can speak English.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

609
4. dyanníi myadyankoon khâafaj sòoj róoj bàat
dyanníi khâa faj róoj hâasìp bàat
   Last month, the light bill was two hundred baht. This month, the light bill was 150 baht.
   dyanníi, khâafaj thûuk lon
   This month the light bill has gone down.

5. dîawníi myakôonníi, kruñthêep mii khloop mâak
dîawníi, kruñthêep mii khloop nôoj
   In the old days, there were many canals in Bangkok. Nowadays, there are fewer canals in Bangkok.
   dîawníi, kruñthêep mii khloop nôojoj lon

6. dîawníi myakôonníi mii khon paj thîaw thîinân mâak
dîaw nîi mii khon paj thîaw thîinân nôojoj
   Formerly, there were many people visiting that place. Nowadays, there are fewer people visiting that place.
   dîawníi, mii khon paj thîaw thîinân nôojoj lon

7. dîawníi myakôonníi, bâannân mâj dîawníi bân nân kàw
   That house was new. Now that house is old.
   (dîawníi) bâannân kàw lon
   That house has gotten older.

610
8.  dỳawníi  mỳakòon níi, bàanchâw
hâa mâj jâak
   dỳawníi, bàanchâw hâa
   jâak
Formerly it was not
difficult to find a
house.
At present it is
difficult to find
a house.

9.  dỳaw  mỳakòon níi, thëwníi
mâj sadùak
   dỳawníi, thëwníi sadùak
   Formerly this area wa
   was inconvenient.
   At present this area
   is convenient.

10. dỳawníi  mỳakòon níi, khon thëi
còp mahàawítthajaalaj
   mìi nòoij
   dỳawníi, khon thëi còp
   mahàawítthajaalaj mìi
   mâak
Formerly there were
few university
graduates.
At present there are
a lot of university
graduates.
   dỳawníi, bàanchâw hâa
   jâak khýn
At present it is in-
creasingly difficult
to find a house.

   dỳaw nìi, thëwníi sadùak
   khýn
At present this area
is more convenient.

   dỳawníi, khon thëi còp
   mahàawítthajaalaj mìi
   mâak khýn
At present the number
of university graduates
is increasing.
f) **Transformation Drill** (Form sentences with the cue words and khûn or kwâa as indicated by the situation.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 1 and 2</th>
<th>Resultant Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a. róon hot</td>
<td>1. mûa waannîi</td>
<td>wannîi aakat róon khûn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aakàat róon</td>
<td>Today it's hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. wanníi aakàat róon mâak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yesterday, it was hot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Today, it is very hot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. wanníi mûawaanníi</td>
<td>wanníi</td>
<td>wanníi aakat róon kwàa mûawaanníi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Today</td>
<td>Today, the weather is hotter than yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yesterday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a. phsen expensive</td>
<td>1. mûakòonníi</td>
<td>dßawníi khâachâwbâan phsen khûn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dßawníi</td>
<td>Today the rent is more expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khâachâw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bân an dyan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la 2000 bàat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dßawníi khâachâwbâan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dyan la 4000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bàat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Formerly, the rent was 2,000 baht a month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Today, the rent is 2,000 baht a month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. thùuk
cheap

1. khâachâwbâan džawníi
   mỳa kòonníi
2. khâachâwbâan
džawníi
   the rent in
   those days
   the rent
today

3. a. nâajùu
   nice (to
   live)
1. mỳakòonníi džawníi
džawníi, thëwníi
   thëwníi mâj
   nâajùu
2. džawníi, thëwníi
   nâajùu
   Formerly, this
   area was not
   nice to live in.
   Today, this area
   is nice to live
in.

b. mỳakòonníi
džawníi
   formerly
today
džawníi, džawníi
   džawníi, thëwníi
   nâajùu (khûn)
kwàa mỳakòon
   Today, this area
   is nicer than in
   those days.

4. a. dìi
good
1. mỳakòonníi,
džawníi
džawníi, thanòn
dìi khûn
   thanòn mâj dìi
   Formerly the road
   was bad.
2. dįawníi, thanôn
dii
At present the road is good.

b. mỳakòonníi
dįawníi
formerly, now

dįawníi, thanôn
dii (khỳn) kwàa
mỳakòonníi

Now the road is better than formerly

5. a. mìi màak
there are a lot

1. mỳakòonníi, dįawníi
thìnìi mìi faràŋ nòcj
mìi faràŋ màak
khỳn

Now, there are more Westerners here.

2. dįawníi, thìnìi
mìi faràŋ màak
Formerly there were few Westerners here.

Now there are a lot of Westerners here.

b. mỳakòonníi, dįawníi

dįawníi, thìnìi
mìi faràŋ màak

(khỳn) kwàa
mỳakòonníi

There are more Westerners now than those days.
g) **Sentence Formation Drill**

Using the information given in the cue sentences form sentences with *lon* or *khûn* so as to illustrate the type of change underway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cue sentences</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pattern</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a. khâw kheéj ruaj</td>
<td>khâw con <em>lon</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dîawníi khâw mii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṇan nôoj lon</td>
<td>He used to be rich.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Now he has less money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. khâw con jùu lésw</td>
<td>khâw con <em>khûn</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dîawníi khâw con mâak kwàa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tès kòon</td>
<td>He was poor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Now he is poorer than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he was before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He's getting even poorer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. a. khôon kheéj phæn | khôon thûuk *lon* |
| dîawníi khôon mii | |
| raakhâa nôoj lon | Things used to be |
| | expensive. |
| | Now the price of things |
| | is going down. |
| | Things are getting |
| | cheaper. |
| b. khôon thûuk jùu lésw | khôon thûuk *khûn* |
| dîawníi thûuk kwàa | |
| tès kòon | Things were already |
| | cheap. |
| | Now things are cheaper |
| | than before. |
| | Things are getting |
| | even cheaper. |
3. a. kháw kheej pen khon dii dįawníi kháw mâj dii
   He used to be a good person.
   Now he isn't good.

   b. kháw pen khon mâj dii dįawníi kháw mâj dii mâak kwàa kàw
   He wasn't a good person.
   Now he's worse than formerly.

   kháw leew lọŋ
   He's turning bad.

   kháw leew khýñ
   He's getting even worse.

4. a. aakàat kheej róon dįawníi aakàat plan pen náaw
   The weather was hot.
   Now it has turned cold.

   aakàat náaw lọŋ
   It's getting colder.

   b. mýawaanníi aakàat náaw
   wanníi aakàat náaw kwàa
   Yesterday it was cold.
   Today it's colder than it was yesterday.

   mýawaanníi
   The weather's becoming even colder.

   aakàat náaw khýñ

5. a. phûujỳn khonnán kheej uân mâak
   That woman used to be fat.

   dįawníi kháw lót námnàk
   Now she has lost a lot of weight.

   dâj mâak

   kháw phòom lọŋ
   She's getting thinner.
b. kháw pen khon phŏm
mûawaannī phŏm phőp kháw
kháw phŏm māak kwàa dēem
She was a thin person.
Yesterday I met her.
She was much thinner than before.

kháw phŏm khûn

6. a. khun sômsàk khéej sabaaj
dräwnī kháw tân tham
ŋaan māak
Somsak used to have it easy.
Now he has a lot of work to do.

kháw lāmbàak lon

b. khun sômsàk lāmbàak jùu léew
dräwnī kháw tân tham ŋaan
nák māak kwàa kòon
Somsak was already having a hard time.
Now he has to work harder than before.

kháw lāmbàak khûn

It's getting harder for him.
35.3 BASIC EPISODE

khun coon wái jën pen khâarâatchakâan krasuăn têanprathêet thîi sâthâanthûut ameerikan. weelaâni khâw phâk jën thîi roonrîem raamâa. khâw hâa bâanchâw maa làaj wan lêeaw.

khâw màj jàak jën aphaatmênt phró khâw chêop jën bâan màak kwàa. khâw jàak dâi bâan jàjjàj phró krîôpkrhuâ khônjkhâw mîi dûajkan hâa khon, khyy khun coon, phanrajaa lê lûuk 3 khon.

bâan dîidîi naj krunthêep hâa jàak lê khâachâw kô phseñ lýâkeen. khun coon dâi khâachâwbân dyan la 5000 bâat, têe bâan thîi khâw paj duu wái khâachâw jàaj tám dyan la hâa phan hâa. dûwnîi, krunthêep khâachâwbân phseñ màak phró mîi khon têâkkaan châw màak khûn.

wannîi pen wansâw, khun coon paj hâa naajnâa. naajnâa phaa khâw paj duu bâan làânnỳî thîi thanón sûkhûmwít sooj thîi jîi sip cêt. bâannîi pen bâan klaarâkâw klaarâmâj. pen têk sôn chán. mîi hông sâm hông, hôînâm 2 hông. mîi hông râpkhêek jàj, hôînâahnân lê hôînkhrhuâ bêp than sanaj. mîi roonrîot jën tít kêt bâan. lài bâan mîi hông kêp khôîo lê ryan khonchâj. nàabâan mîi sanâm kwââñ.

câwkhôînbân khût khâachâw dyan la hâa phan hâa rôc j bêt tê khâw lôt hâj khun coon hâarôc j bêt. pen hâaphan bêt thûan. khâw hâj khun coon tham sânjaachâw nîn pîi kêt càaj nêen luânânâ hâj khâw sâm dyan. khâachâw hâaphan bêt mîi ruam thân khryâñryan. khâw mîi khryâñryan phrôm thûkjâan khàat tê khryâñprâapaañâat. sùan khânâm, khâafaj, khâathoorasàp, lê khââkêes khun coon tông sîa sêñ. khun coon bûc cîwkhôînbân wàa khâw ca jàaj paj jën bâan màj wanthîi nîn dyan thanwaakhom.

618
Translation of the Episode.

Mr. John White is a State Department official. He has just arrived in Thailand. He came to work at the American Embassy. At present, he is staying at the Rama Hotel. He has been looking for a house for many days. He doesn't want to live in an apartment because he prefers a house. He wants a big house because there are five persons in his family: John, his wife and three children.

Good houses are hard to find and the rent is too expensive. John gets 5000 Baht a month for his housing allowance, but the houses he has looked at are at least 5,500 Baht a month. Today rent in Bangkok is very high because there are more demands.

Today is Saturday. John goes to see a house agent. The house agent takes him to look at a house on Sukhumvit Lane 27. This house is not too old, nor brand new. It is a two-story brick house with three bedrooms, and two bathrooms. There is a big living room, dining room and a modern kitchen. There is a carport adjoining the house. At the back of the house, there is a storage room and servants' quarter. There is a big lawn in front of the house.

The landlord charged 5, 500 Baht a month for the rent but for John he came down to 5,000 Baht, which is 500 Baht exactly. He had John sign a lease for one year and pay him three months rent in advance. This 5000 Baht includes furniture. The house is completely furnished except for air conditioners. As for water, electricity, telephone and gas, John has to pay them himself. John told the landlord that he was going to move into the new house on December 1.
QUESTIONS ON THE EPISODE

Answer the following questions according to the story given:

1. khun coon thamjaan araj
   What does John do (for a living)?

2. khâw maa jùu mya nthaj dâj naan rûjàn
   Has he been in Thailand long?

3. weelaanî khâw phák jùu thîinâj
   Where is he staying now?

4. thammaj khun coon tûn hûa bânchâw
   Why does he have to look for a house?

5. thammaj khun coon thûn mâj jàak jùu aphâatment
   Why doesn’t he want to live in an apartment?

6. thammaj khun coon thûn tûnkaan bân jàjjàj
   Why does John need a rather large house?

7. thammaj khun coon thûn tûn hûa bânchâw jùu lâaj wan.
   Why did he have to spend many days looking for a home?

8. khun coon dâj khâachâwbân mâak phoo thîi ca châw bân
dyân la hûa phan hûa rûj bît mâj
   Does he get enough housing allowance to pay for
   the rent at 5,500 per month?

9. bân thîi khun coon tûkloŋ châw jùu thîinâj
   Where is the house John agrees to rent?

10. bàannân pen bân bêepnâj
    What kind of house is it?
    
    (a) sônchân rûy chándiaw  Two or one-story?
    (b) tyk rûy máaj   Masonry or wooden?
THAI BASIC COURSE

(c) mii hôn araj bāañ What rooms are there?
d (d) mii kli hŏnnuon How many bedrooms?
(e) pen bāañlēk rŷ bāanjâj A small or big house?
(f) mii roonrót māj.jûu thīinâj Any carport? Where?

11. câwkhōngbāañ khít khâachâw dyan la thâwrâj
   How much does the landlord charge for the rent?

12. bāannán mii khrînryan mâj. mii araj bāañ.
   Is it furnished? What do they have for furniture?

13. khâachâw hāaphán bâat nî ruam thân khâanâm khâafaj
    dûaj rîplèaw
   Does this 5,000 Baht rent include water and
   electricity?

14. khun coon tham sānjaα châw kîi pii
   How long a lease did John sign?

15. khâw tŏŋ hâj ŋen lūaǹnâa kîi dyan.
   How much deposit does he have to pay?

16. khâw ca jàaj paj jûu bâanmâj mûaraj
   When is the going to move into the new house?

35.5 EXERCISES

a) Suppose one student is Mr. John White, another a house
   agent. Have the two students carry on a conversation
   based on the story given.

b) Suppose one student is Mr. Smith, a bachelor, looking
   for a one bedroom apartment, another student is a
   landlord. Have them carry on a conversation using
   the sentences they have learned.
c) Discuss situations that are in a state of flux whether getting better, worse, harder, etc. For example:

1. Someone is richer or poorer than he used to be.

2. Some things are cheaper or more expensive than formerly.

3. The weather is colder or hotter than it was 2 months ago or will be 3 months hence.

4. Someone's relatives are much fatter or thinner than they were at some time in the past or will be at some time in the future.

d) Compare various people or things in terms of physical size. For example:

*phóo phôm sǔn̂ kwâa mès l fút*  "My father's a foot taller than my mother."

35.6 VOCABULARY

<p>| งั่น  | to be soft, tender |
| งัณ  | to be fat, stout  |
| บัว  | to be light (in weight) |
| จ่าจ  | to be large, big, major, main |
| ข่ำง  | to be hard, firm, strong, stiff |
| klaâŋkàw klaânmàj | not old but not new |
| lambâak | to be hard, difficult, troublesome |
| leew   | to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character) |
| lỳakèen | too..., so... |
| màak  | to be much, many; a lot; very |
| năw   | to be colder (weather, person) |
| nàk   | to be heavy; hard (of work); severely, very |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṇâaj</td>
<td>to be simple, easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phǒom</td>
<td>to be thin (not fat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa-àat</td>
<td>to be clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sân</td>
<td>to be short (in length)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sòkkapròk</td>
<td>to be dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùunŋ</td>
<td>to be high, tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīa</td>
<td>to be short, low (in height)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wájt</td>
<td>White (English name)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-SIX

36.0 BASIC DIALOG:  Buying Clothing

khon khãaj: sêy arãj kha
What would you like to buy?

khon sêykhôon: khêo chom phãa mãj thaj
nöo j khêap
I'd like to look at some Thai silk.

khon khãaj: têŋkaan phãa tât sê
phûuchaaj rû phûujîn kha
Do you want fabric for men or women's clothing?

khonsêykhôon: phãa tât sê kaaŋkêeŋ
phûuchaaj
Fabric for men's pants.

khon khãaj: nîi kha
Here it is.

jàannîi raakhaa lêa la
60 bâat
That kind is 80.

jàannân 80
And the kind over there, 120.

lê jàannôon rûo jîisîp

khonsêykhôon: sêon jàan rês k nân tâaŋ
kân jannaj khêap
What's the difference between the first two kinds?

khon khãaj: nûaphãa mûaŋkân kha
The texture is the same, but they are
têe raakhaa mãj thâwkan
not equal in price.
phrô jàaŋ pêêt sîp bâat
because the 80 baht
nâa kwâaŋ kwâa
one is wider.

khon khãaj: pen phãa jàaŋ dii
It's the best kind.
thêsît
nýanňa, thon māak, lé
māj khɔɔj jāp

khonsýykʰɔŋː: sák nám dāj máj khráp

khonkhǎajː dāj khà tè sák hèn

dìi kwàa

khonsýykʰɔŋː: sák lēsw, hòt máj khráp

khonkhǎajː nítnoɔj khà

It's heavy, very durable, and is wrinkle-resistant

Is it washable?

Yes, but it's better to have it dry cleaned.

Once it's washed, does it shrink?

A little.

36.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) jàan means 'kind, type (with emphasis on quality).

Observe the following example:

phāmǎj mìi lǎaj jàan. mìi jàan dìi, jàan māj dìi
jàan thúuk, jàan pʰeń, jàan nāakwān jàan nāakhēp

There are many kinds of Thai silk. There is the good kind and the bad kind, the cheap kind and the expensive kind, the wide kind, the narrow kind.

b) chanít means 'kind' or 'type' with emphasis on special characteristics, such as 'being colorfast' (chanít sīi māj tōk), or 'being made of wood' (chanít tham dūaj maaj), or 'having long grains (as of rice)' (chanít mēt jaa), etc.

phāa mìi lǎaj chanít: mìi phāmǎj, phāafàaj, phāanajlōn
lē ỳynỳyn

There are many kinds of cloth: silk, cotton, nylon, etc.
36.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Types of Comparison

1. Equality.

thâw + kàp / kan 'equal, same in size or quantity' may occur (1) in construction with stative verbs, or (2) independently.

a) khọn s̀on jàanníi pheèn thâwkan
   These two things are equally expensive. (with stative verb pheèn)
   khâw phûut phaasăthai dâj dìi thâw kàp khun
   He speaks Thai as well as you do. (with stative verb dìi)

b) Independently (as main verb in the sentence)

phâa s̀on jàanníi raakhaa thâw kan
   These two fabrics are of the same price.

bân lânnán khâachâw thâw kàp bân lânníi
   The rent for that house is the same as for this one.

2. Inequality.

kwàa 'more (than), to a greater extent' occurs in construction with stative Verbs.

khâw khàp rót rew kwàa phôm. He drives faster than I do.

ráanníi dìi kwàa ráannóon This shop is better than that one.
3. **Equality and Inequality compared**

   a) **phpom chāop khun thāw (thāw) kāp khāw**
      
      I like you as much as (I like) him.

   b) **phpom chāop khun māak kwāa khāw**
      
      I like you more than (I like) him.

4. **Superlative.**

   **thīsūt** 'most, -est' occurs in construction with stative verbs.

   nāṃsyū lēmni dī thīsūt  This book is the best.

   khāw pen nākriān thī kēn  He is the best student

   thīsūt nāj chān          in the class.

b) **Equational sentences.**

   **phāa (jàañ pêtslp bàat) nāakwān**

   Cloth (of the 80 baht kind.) (is) wide.

   This type of sentence is called an **equational sentence.**

   It is very common in Thai. Other examples are:

   **phānī nāakhēp**  This cloth is narrow.

   bān lānnān khāachāw phēŋ  The rent for that house

   is high.
Formation of Noun Phrases derived from this type of sentence is also common.

phasis nâakwâan
rôt raakhaa phesn

The wide material.
Expensive cars.

c) NOUN PHRASE + dii kwàa 'It's better to...

VERB PHRASE

dii kwàa may have either Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase as subject. Below are some examples with Verb Phrase as subject:
sákhesn dii kwàa It's better to dry clean (it).
(phôm wâa, khun) jùu (I think) it's better for (you) to stay home.
bân dii kwàa

36.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill (Use jaan with the stative verb and the noun to form a Noun Phrase.)

Cues Noun Phrase
1. dii, phâmáj phâmáj jaan dii
   good, silk cloth good quality silk cloth
2. phesn, phátlom phátlom jaan phesn
   expensive, fan Expensive fans.
3. dii, tûujen tûujen jaan dii
   good, refrigerator Good refrigerators.
4. thûuk, fêenîthê fêenîthê jaan thûuk
   cheap, furniture Cheap furniture.
ผ้า นิ่ม น้ำก้าน

ผ้า นิ่ม น้ำเข็ญ

ถนน สดี่ นิ่ม ถนนก้าน

ถนน สดี่ นิ่ม ถนนเข็ญ
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. phên, tó
tó jàañ phên
expensive, table
Expensive tables.

6. dii, kâwìi
dìi jàañ dii
good, chair
Good quality chairs.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

phâamâj jàañníi pen phâamâj jàañ dii thîisùt
This kind of silk is the best kind
(of silk).

1. phátłom
phátłom jàañníi pen phátłom jàañ dii thîisùt
This kind of fan is the best kind
of fan.

2. khrýañ pràpaakàat
khrýañ pràpaakàat jàañníi pen khrýañ
pràpaakàat jàañ dii thîisùt
This kind of air conditioner is the
best kind.

3. tûujen
tûujen jàañníi pen tûujen jàañ dii thîisùt
This kind of refrigerator is the
best kind.

4. khrýañ khrua
khrýañ khrua jàañníi pen khrýañ khrua
jàañ dii thîisùt
This kind of kitchen utensil is the
best kind.

5. fêenîtēë
fêenîtēë jàañníi pen fêenîtēë jàañ dii
thîisùt
This kind of furniture is the best kind.

630
c) **Transformation Drill**

Combine the sentences in patterns 1, 2, 3 with the cue to form the resultant pattern, then repeat the operation using a stative verb with opposite meaning (the second cue).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patterns 1, 2, 3</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Resultant Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a. phāmāj jàanníi māj dii</td>
<td>dii</td>
<td>phāmāj jàannóon dii thīisūt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. phāmāj jàannán dii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. phāmāj jàannóon dii mâak</td>
<td>leew</td>
<td>phāmāj jàanníi leew thīisūt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This kind of silk is not good.  
That kind of silk is good.  
That other kind of silk is the best.  
The other kind of silk is the best.

2. a. samùt jàanníi māj dii | leew | samùt jàannóon dii thīisūt |
| b. samùt jàannán dii | | |
| c. samùt jàannóon dii mâak | dii | samùt jàanníi leew thīisūt |

This notebook is not good.  
That notebook is good.  
The notebook over there is very good.  
The notebook over there is the best.  
This notebook is the worst.
THAI BASIC COURSE

3. a. aahān thīni thai
   b. aahān thīnin thēak
   c. aahā thīinōon thēak lya

   The food here is expensive.
   The food there is more expensive.
   The food over there is very, very expensive.

   aahā thīinōon thēak thīisūt
   aahān thīni thai thūuk thīisūt

4. a. týk lānnīi māj jáj
   b. týk lānnán jáj
   c. týk lānnōon jáj māak

   This building is not large.
   That building is large.
   The building over there is very large.

   týk lānnōon jáj thīisūt
   týk lānnīi lēk thīisūt

5. a. nānsūyphim thaj māj nāa
   b. nānsūyphim wanaathīt nāa
   c. nānsūyphim niw jōok nāa

   Thai newspapers are not thick.

   nāa nānsūyphim niw jōok nāa thīisūt
   baan nānsūyphim thaj baan thīisūt

   The N.Y. paper is the thickest.
The Sunday paper is thick.
The N.Y. paper is very thick.
The Thai paper is the thinnest.

6. a. thanôn careenkruŋ mâj kwâan
   b. thanôn phêtburiî kwâan
   c. thanôn mítraphâap kwâan mâak

thanôn mítraphâap kwâan thîisût
khêsp thanôn careenkruŋ khêsp thîisût

Charoen Krung is not wide.
Phetburi Street is wide.
Friendship Highway is very wide.

Friendship Highway is the widest.
Charoenkrung Street is the narrowest.

7. a. khun prasît rian mâj kèn
   b. khun prasàat rian kèn
   c. khun prasôn rian kèn mâak

khun prasôn rian kèn thîisût
khun prasít rian jës thîisût

Prasit is not a good student.
Prasat is a good student.
Prasong is a very good student.

Prasong is the best student.
Prasit is the worst student.
8. a. khâa rótraaŋ mâj phseen
    b. khâa rótmme phseen
    c. khâa rót théksäi phseen mâak

    phseen khâa rót thésksäi phseen thísüt
    thûuk khâa rótraaŋ thûuk thísüt

    Street car fare is cheap.
    Bus fare is expensive.
    Taxi fare is very expensive.

7. a. sukhothaj kheej pen
    mâyânluân mâya pii phoo
    sôc 1800

    b. ajuthajaa kheej pen
    mâyânluân mâya pii
    phoo sıc 1893.

    c. krûnthëep pen mâyânluân
    mâya pii phoo sıc 2325

    kàw sukhothaj pen mâyânluân
    mài thísüt

    Sukhothaj was the capital
    up to B.E. 1800.
    Ayuthaya was the capital
    in B.E. 1893.
    Bangkok is the capital
    since B.E. 2325.

    Suthoothai is the
    oldest capital.
    Bangkok is the
    newest capital.
d) **Sentence Construction Drill**

(Compose Questions using the cue words and **thīisūt**)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mahāwītthajaalaj, kàw, naj prathēet thaj</td>
<td>mahāwītthajaalaj araj pen mahāwītthajaalaj thīi kàw thīisūt naj prathēet thaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university, to be old, in Thailand</td>
<td>What university is the oldest in Thailand?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. caṇwāt, mīi khonjūu māak naj prathēet thaj</td>
<td>caṇwāt araj pen caṇwāt thīi mīi khonjūu māak thīisūt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Province. To have many people living in (it), in Thailand.</td>
<td>What province has the largest population in Thailand?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. caṇwāt, jūu klaj cāak kruṇṭhēep māak</td>
<td>caṇwāt araj pen caṇwāt thīi jūu klaj cāak kruṇṭhēep māak thīisūt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Province. (Very) far from Bangkok</td>
<td>What province is the farthest province from Bangkok?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nānsyphīm, mīi khon àan māak, naj prathēet thaj</td>
<td>nānsyphīm araj pen nānsyphīm thīi mīi khon àan māak thīisūt naj prathēet thaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newspaper, to have many readers. In Thailand</td>
<td>What newspaper has the largest number of readers in Thailand?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. krasuan, jàj, naj prathēet thaj</td>
<td>krasuan araj pen krasuan thīi jàj thīisūt naj prathēet thaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ministry. Big. In Thailand</td>
<td>What ministry is the biggest ministry in Thailand?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. prathêt, nâajùu naj lôok

prathêt araj nàj pen prathêt thîi nàajùu thîsût naj lôok

Country. Nice to live in. In the world

What country is the nicest country to live in this world?

e) Transformation Drill

(Change patterns 1 and 2 into a sentence of comparison using the cue and thàw.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1 and 2</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phâa jànnân thûuk jànnôon pheen</td>
<td>raakhaa Price</td>
<td>phâa sôon jànn nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. bân lênnân khâachâw pheen lênnôon thûuk</td>
<td>khâachâw</td>
<td>bân sôon lênn nán khâachâw mâj thâwkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pàakkaa dâmnnân thûuk dâmnnîi pheen</td>
<td>raakhaa</td>
<td>pàakkaa sôon dâm nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

That kind of fabric is cheap. That kind of fabric over there is expensive.
The prices of those two fabrics are not equal.
The rent for that house is high. The rent for that house (over there) is cheap.
The rents for those two houses are not equal.

That pen is cheap. This pen is expensive.
The prices of those two pens are not equal.
4. **phāa jàaŋnōon nāawkwān**
   **nāawkwān**
   **phāa sōŋ jāaŋ nān**
   **nāa kwāan māj**
   That kind of fabric
   (of the fabric)
   Those two fabrics
   are not equal in
   width.

   **phāa jàaŋnān nāakhēep**
   **Width (of the fabric)**
   **thāwkan.**

   **That fabric is narrow.**

5. **khāw dāj khāachāw**
   **khāa**
   **raw dāj**
   **Housing**
   **We get different sized**
   **bāan nōo**
   **chāwbāan**
   **khāachāwbāan**
   **housing allowances.**
   **phōm dāj khāa**
   **māj thāwkan**
   **māj thāwkan**
   **I get a big housing**
   **allowance.**

   **chāwbāan māak**

---

**f) Transformation Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. nānśy y sōŋlēṃ nī</td>
<td>nānśy y lēmnān</td>
<td>nānśy y lēmnān dīl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīl thāwkan</td>
<td>nānśy y lēmni</td>
<td>thāwkap nānśy y lēmnii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These two books are equally good.</td>
<td></td>
<td>That book is as good as this one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. phāa sōŋ jāaŋnān | phāa jāaŋnān | phāa jāaŋnān |
| raakhaa thāwkan | raakhaa thāw ka jàaŋnī | thāw ka khōn thīnī |
| Those two kinds of fabrics are equal in price. | | The price of that fabric is the same as equal to this one. |

| 3. khōn thīnīn kā thīnī ph̄sēn thāwkan | khōn thīnīn | khōn thīnīn ph̄sēn th̄w kā khōn thīnī |
| Things here and there are equally expensive. | khōn thīnī | Things there are as expensive as things here. |
| khōn thīnī | | |
4. ภูญญา ส่อง ค่อน น้ำ พระจุล ท่าวิกัน ภูญญา ค่อน น้ำ
Those two girls are equally pretty.

5. ค่อน น้ำ พระจุล ท่าวิกัน ค่อน น้ำ พระจุล เกร็ต
John and Fred are equally good (students).

6. บ้าน ส่อง แล้ว น้ำ จั่ว ท่าวิกัน บ้าน แล้ว น้ำ
Those two houses are equally big.

7. ค่อน 2,000 บาท ค่อน 2,000 บาท
He makes 2,000 Baht a month. His wife makes 2,000 Baht a month.

8. ค่อน 2,000 บาท ค่อน 2,000 บาท
His wife and he get the same salary.

---

g) Sentence Construction and Response Drill

(Form a question with one set of cues and answer it according to the second set.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CUE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>CUE</th>
<th>RESPONSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ร้าน ผ้าสัก ท่าจ</td>
<td>ร้าน ผ้าสัก ท่าจ ไม่</td>
<td>ราช ท่าจ</td>
<td>ไม่</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Yes/No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. khɔɔŋ thîi woochîntân</td>
<td>Is studying Thai as fun as studying Vietnamese?</td>
<td>Yes, it is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phɛɛŋ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khɔɔŋ thîi njújóok</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Things in Washington</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are things in Washington as expensive as in New York?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. roongrian phaaŋsa thîi</td>
<td>Is the language school in Monterey. Big FSI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monteeree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éf és aj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The language school in Monterey. Big FSI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nákrian khonnán kéŋ</td>
<td>That student as good as that student over there?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nákrian khonnón</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. jùu ameerkâa sabaaj</td>
<td>Is living in America as easy as living abroad?</td>
<td>No, it isn't.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jùu táanprathêet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. aakàat thîi
   woɔchiɔtən
   róon
   (aakàat) thîi
   kruŋthêep

   No  mâj thâw
   woɔchiɔtən róon
   thâw kap thîi
   kruŋthêep majkhráp

   The weather in
   Washington
   Hot. The weather
   in Bangkok

   Is Washington as
   hot as Bangkok?
   No, it isn't.

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thôn mâj
   jàp mâj
   nàa mâj
   mỹan mâj
   tâŋ kan mâj
   hôt mâj
   Is it durable?
   Does it wrinkle?
   Is it thick?
   Is it the same?
   Is it different?
   Does it shrink?

2. sáknám dâj mâj
   sákhêen dâj mâj
   sak dâj mâj
   rîit dâj mâj
   Is it washable (in water)?
   Is it dry cleanable?
   Is it washable?
   Can you iron it?

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response (negative)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. thôn mâj
   Is it durable? | mâj thôn leaj
|                   | mâj thôn
|                   | mâj khôj thôn
|                   | {mâj (khôj) thôn thâwràj
|                   | {mâj (khôj) thôn nák
|                   | Not at all.
|                   | No.
|                   | Not too durable.
|                   | Not very durable. |
| 2. nàa mâj
   Is it thick?   | mâj nàa leaj
|                   | mâj nàa
|                   | mâj khôj nàa
|                   | {mâj (khôj) nàa thâwràj
|                   | {mâj nàa nák
|                   | Not at all.
|                   | No.
|                   | Not too thick.
|                   | Not very thick. |
| 3. dîi mâj
   Is it good?   | mâj dîi leaj
|                   | mâj dîi
|                   | mâj khôj dîi
|                   | Not at all.
|                   | No.
|                   | Not too good. |

640
4. จ่าปม่าจ่า
Does it wrinkle?
ม่าจ่า ม่าจ่า
Not at all.
màj kха找回màj
Hardly at all.
màj (кha找回) ม่าท่วยramidàj
Not very much.
màj จ่า นัก
Not so much.
5. มี่แยม่าจ่า
Is it the same?
ม่ามี่แยม่า
Not at all.
màj มี่แย
No.
màj คha找回 มี่แย
Not really.
bàj (кha找回) มี่แยท่วยramidàj
Not very much.

j) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phaа jааа ní  kааааааа aan tааа kan</td>
<td>kham wаа síа ka kham wаа ้อак</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jаааа kха找回 khrарп</td>
<td>tааа aan kan jаааа kха找回</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s the difference between this</td>
<td>What’s the difference between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabric and that one?</td>
<td>the word 'síа' and '้อак'?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. kham wаа 'síа' ka
kham wаа '้อак'

2. phааааа isааа nаа
phaаааа nыа

3. kха找回mеhеn kхочkхаw
kоh จоm kхun

4. nааsъy
sъonlеm ní

What’s the difference between your opinion and his?

What’s the difference between these two books?
THAI BASIC COURSE

5. ฅชง สง จั้นนิิ
khชง สง จั้นนิิ ตาน คาน
jaงนจ ขรอป
What's the difference between these two things?

k) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sรก หงน ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to dry clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sรก หงน จั้นนิิ ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to buy this kind of silk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duน นรก รยักรนนน ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to go to see that movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phรก ทิงนัน ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to stay there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thamment รัชชากาน ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to work for the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jุย ทชวนิิ ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to live around here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj ทาน อาหาน ทาย ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to go and have a Thai meal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paj praจสานิกลาาญ ดิว กวํา</td>
<td>It's better to go to the central post office.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1) **Expansion Drill**

1. kwâañ
   nâa kwâañ
   phâañ nâa kwâañ
   phâañ nî nâa kwâañ
   phâañ jâañ nî nâa kwâañ
   phâañ màj jâañ nî nâa kwâañ

   **Wide**
   The fabric is wide.
   The wide fabric.
   This fabric is wide.
   This kind of fabric is wide.
   This kind of silk is wide.

2. kwâañ
   kwâañ thâwrâj
   nâa kwâañ thawràj
   phâañ nâa kwâañ thâwrâj
   phâañ jàañnán nâa kwâañ thâw râj
   phâamâj jàaqnán nâa kwâañ thâwrâj

   **Wide**
   How wide?
   How wide is the straight grain (of fabric).
   How wide is the fabric?
   How wide is that kind of fabric?
   How wide is that kind of silk?

3. kwâañ
   kwâañ sîlisîp nîw
   nâa kwâañ sîlisîp nîw
   phâañ nâa kwâañ sîlisîp
   phâañ màj jàañnán nâa kwâañ sîlisîp nîw

   **Wide**
   Forty inches wide
   The straight grain of fabric is 40" wide.
   Forty inches wide fabric(s)
   That kind of silk is forty inches wide.

4. màj kwâañ
   nâa màj kwâañ
   phâañ nâa nàj kwâañ
   phâamâj jàañnán nâa màj kwâañ

   **Not wide**
   The straight grain of fabric is not wide.
   The not very wide fabric(s)
   That kind of silk is not wide.

36.4 **EXERCISES**

a) Find out from the tutor

1. what kinds of cloth you can buy in Thailand,
2. where you can buy them (names of shops and locations),

3. where and how silk is 'grown' in Thailand,

4. where and how it is woven and what kind of dye is used, and

5. what the difference is between various kinds of fabrics sold in Thailand (in terms of whether they shrink, are washable, durable, etc.)

b) Discuss the difference in quality and price between different objects.

c) Discuss differences in climate in different countries.

d) Find out from the tutor or another student what some of the 'superlatives' in the world are; for example,

1. the most beautiful city,

2. the hottest climate,

3. the oldest city, etc.

e) One student suggests various 'action options'. Other students disagree with his suggestions and suggest others that they consider better. Finally one student comes up with what he considers to be the best suggestion of all. Other students disagree or agree with the suggestion.

1 ᵐBookmark (pronounced 'worm'); ᵃBookmark (pronounced 'weave cloth'); ᵃBookmark (pronounced 'to dye cloth')
36.5 VOCABULARY

baañ thin
chanít kind, type (emphasis on type)
frét Fred (name)
hòt to shrink
jàañ kind, type (with emphasis on quality)
jàándii good quality
jáp to wrinkle
jóom (phâa) to dye (cloth)
khexp narrow
khwaamhën opinion
kwâñ wide, to be broad
lân yard (36')
mâjkhôoj scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mêt seed, grain, pill
mítraphâap Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
nâa khêep narrow
nâa heavy (of material), heavy texture

nôn (tua) worm
nỳaphâа texture of cloth
phâa fâaj cotton
phâa mây silk
phâa najlên nylon
phátlom (khrýañ) electric fan
rîit to iron (cloth)
sák héen to dry clean
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thai Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sákh nám</td>
<td>washable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tàaŋ kàp</td>
<td>to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thâw kàp</td>
<td>equal, same in size or quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thon</td>
<td>to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thîisut</td>
<td>superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoo (phâa)</td>
<td>to weave cloth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tôujen (tûu)</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

37.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing and Jewelry

khonsýy: phàa jàñní tât sýanšök ka kañkeen phûuchaaj cháj phàa kli láa
For this kind of material how many yards does it take for a jacket and pair of pants?

khonkháaj: raaw pèet láa
About 8 yards.

khonsýy: khun mìi sīi araj bân khráp
What colors do you have?

khonkháaj: mìi sīi thaw, dam, kromathâa lèèwkò sīi námtaan
I have grey, black, blue, and brown.

khonsýy: sīi tòk bân máj
Does the color fade any?

khon kháaj: mâj tòk leej
I can guarantee it.

ráproon dâj

khonsýy: nán, phon aw sīi pèet láa
Then I'll take 8 yards of grey.

(khonkháaj tât phàa, aw phàa sàj thûng, lè sôñ hàj khonsýy.) (The saleslady cuts the material, puts it in a bag, and hands it to the buyer.)

khonsýy: thànmòt thàwràj khráp
How much is it altogether?

khonkháaj: kâaw róoj hôkslp bàat thûan kha
960 baht exactly.

khun mâj chom sînkháa jààn yyn bân rêkhá
Wouldn't you like to look at something else?
THAI BASIC COURSE

khonsýy: khun mii araj bâaŋ khráp
What do you have?

khonkhāj: thaan nóon mii khrýánñān,
Over there's silver-
khryánthôm, khrýánthooñ
ware, niello ware,
léw kô phêtphiâoj
gold, and jewelry.

thaan khwâa mii khrýañ
On the right there
khêñ, khrýañ thooñ
is lacquerware,
sâmrit ka māajkësalâk
bronze ware, and
wood carvings.

khonkhāj: ráan (khòñ) raw mii
Our shop has a
khòñ hâj lỳak mâak
better selection
kwàa thîiyyn
than other places.

37.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) Measurement. In Thailand the metric system, the
'English' system, and the (old) Thai system are used
in measurement. Some things are measured in one system
and some in another, and some things can be measured in
more than one system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System used</th>
<th>Things being measured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Either metric or 'English'</td>
<td>length, width, height of small objects (tables, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metric</td>
<td>distance, weight, content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metric</td>
<td>length of fabrics, except silk in Bangkok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old) Thai</td>
<td>land area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Measuring units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric system</th>
<th>'English' system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>méét</td>
<td>'meter'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nîw</td>
<td>'inch'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sen(tméét)</td>
<td>'centimeter'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fút</td>
<td>'foot'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THAI BASIC COURSE

kiloo(méet) 'kilometer' lāa 'yard'
kram 'gram' lāa khrûŋ 'one and one half yards'
sen(tikram) 'centigram' khrûŋ lāa 'half yard'
kiloo(kram) 'kilogram' sakruu 'one fourth yard'
lít 'liter' mai 'mile'

The Thai system will be taken up later.

b) ráproon means 'to guarantee, certify, or vouch for something'.
ráproon dâj could be translated 'You can take my word for it'.

c) châj means 'to use up, require, take' (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)

1. of time:  naanníi tôn châj weelaa sâon pîì
   This work takes 2 years.

2. of people:  naanníi tôn châj cîwnâathîi lâaj khon
   This work requires a lot of personnel.

d) lîjak means 'to choose or select'.
khoon háj lîjak 'selections' (of merchandise, things, etc.)
thaañ lîjak 'choice' (as a means)
kaañ lîjak 'Choice, selection' (as an action)
lîjak + PERSON + pen + POSITION, TITLE 'to choose someone to be in a certain position'
khâw lîjak khâw pen prathaän khoon samoosoân
'They chose him as President of the club.'
lîjaktâñ 'to elect' (as in a political election)
khâw dâj ráp lîjaktâñ pen prathaanaathîpoodii khoon saharât
'He was elected President of the United States.'
37.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Stative verbs like kwâng 'to be wide', sûn 'to be tall', nàk 'to be heavy', etc. are followed by Number + Classifier (metric) in sentences of measurement, like the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Phrase</th>
<th>Verb of Measurement</th>
<th>No. + Classifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. tó tuaníi</td>
<td>kwâng</td>
<td>24 níw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phûan phôm</td>
<td>sûn</td>
<td>1 mét 50 sentimét</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. krapâw baj nán</td>
<td>nàk</td>
<td>8 kilo kwàa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. That table is 24 inches wide.
2. My friend is 1.50 meters tall.
3. That bag weighs more than 8 kilograms.

b) Compare the two English sentences 'The color in this cloth is fast.' with 'This cloth is colorfast.' It is clear that these two sentences are identical in meaning, but are not identical in form. A similar situation occurs in Thai. Observe the contrast in form in these pairs of sentences with identical meaning.

sûn khoŋ phâníi màj tòk → phâníi sûn màj tòk
1 2 3                            2 1 3
'The color in this cloth doesn't run.' 'This cloth is colorfast.'

raakahà khoŋ rôt khanníi thûuk → rôt khanníi raakahà thûuk
1 2 3                             2 1 3
'The price of this car is low.' 'This car is cheap.'

khâacâw bâan lânníi màj phesn → bâan lânníi khâacâw màj phesn
1 2 3                              2 1 3

650
The rent for this house is not high. This house doesn't rent for a high price.

Although both members of the pairs of sentences above are correct, the second type is normally used.

Chart 1: DIMENSIONS

\[ \text{tó tuaníi} \quad \text{kwâaŋ} \quad 24 \text{ níw} \]
\[ \text{jaaw} \quad 36 \text{ níw} \]
\[ \text{náa} \quad 3 \text{ níw} \]
\[ \text{sûn} \quad 20 \text{ níw} \]

This table is 24" wide.
36" long.
3" thick.
20" high.
37.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phāajānníi tāt syakaañkeeni phūuchaaj cháj phāa kli lāa
   For this kind of material, how many yards does it take
   to make a jacket and a pair of trousers?

2. qaanníi, tōŋ cháj khontham kli khon.
   How many people does this work require?

3. qaanníi, tōŋ cháj weelaa kli pii.
   How many years does this work take?

4. qaann phāthanaa thiinníi tōŋ cháj cāwnâathíi læaj khon.
   How many personnel are needed for this community development?

5. khrooaqkaanníi tōŋ cháj nēn mâak.
   This project costs a lot of money.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phānīi sii màj tōk leej. ráprouŋ dâj.
   This fabric is colorfast. (I) can guarantee (it).

2. phūuchaaj khonníi pen khondii. ráprouŋ dâj.
   This man is a good person. (I) can attest to (it).

3. khōŋ thií ráanníi pen khōŋ dii thísut. ráprouŋ dâj.
   The merchandise here is the best. (I) can vouch for (it).

4. aahnān thiinníi arój thísùt. ráprouŋ dâj.
   The food here is the best. (I) can guarantee (it).

5. rōt khanníi khryāŋ dii mâak. ráprouŋ dâj.
   This car has very good engine. (I) can vouch for that.

6. bāan lāŋ nī khāchaaw màj phēŋ keenpaj. ráprouŋ dâj.
   The rent of this house is not too high. (I) can
   guarantee it. (You can take my word for it).

652
7. ráanníi mīi khǒŋ hâj lỳak mâål kwâa thīì̀yyn. ráprooŋ dâj. This store has better selections than others. (I) can guarantee it.

8. khryâŋthôm ráanníi dîi kwâa thīì̀yyn. ráprooŋ dâj. The nielloware in this shop is better than other places. (I) can guarantee it.

c) Transformation Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phânníi sǐi mâj tòk leeq râprooŋ dâj. The color of this fabric doesn't fade. (I) can guarantee.</td>
<td>phṃm râprooŋ dâj wâa phânníi sǐi mâj tòk leeq. I can guarantee that this fabric is colorfast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khôn khonníi pen khondii râprooŋ dâj. This man is a good person. (I) can guarantee.</td>
<td>phṃm râprooŋ dâj wâa khôn khonníi pen khondii. I can guarantee that this person is a good man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dîi thîisùt râprooŋ dâj. Things in this shop are of the best quality. (I) can guarantee.</td>
<td>phṃm râprooŋ dâj wâa khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dîi thîisùt. I can guarantee that things in this shop are of the best quality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. aahâan thîi nī aròj thîisùt. râprooŋ dâj. The food here is the best (I) can guarantee.</td>
<td>phṃm râprooŋ dâj wâa aahâan thîinī aròj thîisùt. I can guarantee that the food here is the best.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. rôt khânníi khryâŋ dîi mâak. râprooŋ dâj. This car has a very good engine. (I) can guarantee.</td>
<td>phṃm râprooŋ dâj wâa rôt khânníi khryâŋ dîi mâak. I can guarantee that this car has a very good engine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. บ้าน ลังไก ฆ่าช่าว防护 peater ความ แพง
ร่าผ่อน ผ่อน
The rent for this house is not too expensive.
(I) can guarantee.

7. หราย ทอง ที่ ไปดี
กว่า ที่ ไถ่
ร่าผ่อน ผ่อน
The jewelry here is better than at other places. (I) can guarantee.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>d) Response Drill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cue</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. น้ำสี</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ท่าว</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
grey | What color do you like? | I want grey. |
| 3. สาม ล้าน | คุณ คา แหวน แหวน | แล้ว สาม ล้าน |
three yards | How much do you want? | I want three yards. |
| 4. แอน จั่ว | คุณ คา แหวน แหวน | แอน จั่ว |
The big one. | Which one do you want? | I want the big one. |
| 5. ล้ำสิ่ง | คุณ คา แหวน แหวน | แล้ว ล้ำสิ่ง |
phan บัด | What house do you want? | I want the 4,000 Baht one. |
| 6. ฉาน ดีที่สุด | คุณ คา แหวน แหวน | แล้ว ฉาน ดีที่สุด |
The best kind | Which kind of fabric do you like? | The best kind. |
e) **Sentence Construction Drill**

The instructor will ask questions so as to elicit the answers given in the cues, as in the following example:

| T: | aw araj khráp | What do you want (to get)? |
| S: | phâa măjthaj khráp | Thai silk. |
| T: | phâa jàañ nâj | What quality of cloth? |
| S: | jàañ dii thîisùt | The best quality. |
| T: | aw kli lâa khráp | How many yards? |
| S: | sâam lâa khráp | 3 yards. |
| T: | aw phâa măjthaj jàañ dii '4 lâa, châj măj khráp | You want 4 yards of good quality Thai silk, right? |
| S: | mâj châj, aw phâa măjthaj jàañ dii thîisùt sâam lâa | No, I want three yards of the best quality Thai silk. |

Use the following sets of cue words in the same manner as above:

1. sîa, diî, s̬on̬ tua, sîi khâaw
2. sîan̬k̬ ka kaṅkeę, diî thîisùt, nỳŋ chût, sîi námtaan
3. nâns̬y̬ phaašaa thaj, s̬on̬ lêm, diidii
4. phâtlom, jàañdii, j̥ipùn, nỳŋ an

655
f) Question and Construction Drill

Pretend you don't know what the other person said, and ask a question so as to get a repetition of the original statement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Answer</th>
<th>Second Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sɔ̄ɔŋ lāa</td>
<td>aw {thâwràj} nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two yards</td>
<td>{kli lāa}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many yards did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sỳi thaw</td>
<td>aw sỳi araŋ nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What color?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. phâamāj</td>
<td>aw {araŋ} nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>{phâa araŋ}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. jàaŋnóon</td>
<td>aw jàaŋ nàj nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That kind</td>
<td>What kind did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. nỳŋ chút</td>
<td>aw {thâwràj} nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one set</td>
<td>{kli chút}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. khrỳaŋ thôm</td>
<td>aw araŋ nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nielloware</td>
<td>What did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. jàaŋ raakhaa</td>
<td>aw jàaŋnàj nakhráp?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pèsst sip bàat</td>
<td>What kind did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The 80 Baht one.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sãam lêm</td>
<td>aw {thâwràj} nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three</td>
<td>{kli lêm}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. tua sỳikhãaw</td>
<td>aw tua araŋ nakhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The white one</td>
<td>Which one did you say you want?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. an thīi jūu thaŋ kwāa
   The one on the right
   Which one did you say you want?

   g) Substitution Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phâamâj</td>
<td>ránníi mìi khōn hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>This store has a better selection of silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>than other places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánsîy</td>
<td>ránníi mìi nánsîy hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>books</td>
<td>This store has a better selection of books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>than other places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâw</td>
<td>khâw mìi nánsîy hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>They have a better selection of books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>than other places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāanchâw</td>
<td>khâw mìi bāanchâw hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houses for rent</td>
<td>They have a better selection of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>houses for rent than other places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khōn</td>
<td>khâw mìi khōn hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td>They have a better selection of merchandise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>than other places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arâj</td>
<td>khâw mìi arâj hâj lỳak mâak kwàa thìïyyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td>They have a better selection of things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>than other places.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## THAI BASIC COURSE

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. nänsêq sōng lêm níi, khun ca lyâk lêmâaj&lt;br&gt;Of these two books which one would you choose?</td>
<td>phôm aw lêmnoon&lt;br&gt;I'd take that one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. chiangmâj ka krunthêep.&lt;br&gt;khun ca lyâk jùu canwat nâj.&lt;br&gt;Between Chiangmai and Bangkok which province would you choose to live in?</td>
<td>phôm(can) lyâk jùu krunthêep&lt;br&gt;I'd choose to live in Bangkok.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. thâa khun lyâk dâj, khun ca lyâk pen mâo rý khruu&lt;br&gt;If you can have a choice, would you rather be a doctor, or a teacher?</td>
<td>phôm lyâk pen mâo&lt;br&gt;I'd rather be a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun ca lyâk jùu thînâj&lt;br&gt;Where will you (choose to) live?</td>
<td>phôm mâj mîi thâan lyâk&lt;br&gt;I have no choice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khon sōng khonníi khun ca lyâk khraj pen prathaanaa thîpboodii&lt;br&gt;Of these two persons, which one would you choose for President?</td>
<td>phôm khít wâa phôm ca lyâk khon rèsk pen prathaanaa thîpboodii&lt;br&gt;I think I'd choose the first one for President.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. thâa khun lyâk dâj, khun ca lyâk pen phûuchâaj rý phûuchâaj&lt;br&gt;If you had a choice, would you rather be a woman or a man?</td>
<td>pen phûuchâaj dîi kwàa khûrap&lt;br&gt;It's better to be a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. thammaj khâw têng châj weelaa hâa roongriân hâj lûuk jùu lâaj dyan&lt;br&gt;Why did it take him many months to find a school for his children?</td>
<td>phrô khâw jàak ca lyâk roongriân diidîi hâj lûuk khâw rîan&lt;br&gt;Because he wanted to choose good schools for them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. thammaj kháw ca tāŋ
   paj wiatnam
Why does he have to go
to Vietnam?
phró thaaŋ râatchakaan lâk
   kháw paj
Because the government has
chosen him to go.

9. khun ca lâk khâarâatchakaan
   paj duu naan thīi tāŋ
   prathêt kli khon
How many government offi-
cials are going to go go
abroad on an observation
tour?
raw ca lâk (khâarâatchakaan)
   paj (duu naan thīi tāŋ prathêt)
   3 khon
We'll choose three government
officials.

10. khun ca lâk khâarâatchakaan
   paj duu naan tāŋ prathêt
    caak thīinâj bâan
Where are you going to choose
the government officials to
go abroad from?
raw ca lâk caak mahâwítthajâalaj
   lē krasuâŋ tâŋ tâŋ
We'll choose them from univer-
sities and different ministries.

1) Expansion Drill

1. nîw
   kli nîw
   kwââŋ kli nîw
   nāa kwââŋ kli nîw
   phââ nî nāa kwââŋ kli nîw
Inch(es)
How many inches?
How many inches wide?
How many inches wide (for fabric)?
How wide is this fabric?

2. lâa
   kli lâa
   jaaw kli lâa
   chîak sênnîi jaaw kli lâa
Yard(s)
How many yards?
How many yards long?
How many yards long is this
rope?

3. kiloo (mêêt)
   kli kiloo
   jaaw kli kiloo
   thanôn sâajníi jaaw kli kiloo
kilo(s)
How many kilos?
How many kilos long?
How many kilos is this road?
How long is this road?

4. mêêt
   kwââŋ kli mêêt
   thanôn sâajníi kwââŋ kli
   mêêt
Meter(s)
How many meter(s) wide?
How wide is this road?
5. kiloo (kram)
   kilo(s)
kli kiloo
   How many kilos?
nâk kli kiloo
   How many kilos by weight?
khîn chîn nî nàk kli
   How many kilos does this thing weigh?
kilo or kilos

6. thâwrâj
   How much?
nâa thâwrâj
   How thick?
nânsîy lêmîní nâa thâwrâj
   How thick is this book?

7. thâwrâj
   How much?
sùûn thâwrâj
   How tall?
khuûn sùûn thâwrâj
   How tall are you?

j) Sentence Construction Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phâanîi</td>
<td>phâanîi nâa kwâaŋ thâwrâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwâaŋ</td>
<td>How wide is this fabric?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thâwrâj</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this fabric</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. thanôn mittraphâap
   thanôn mittraphâap jaaw
   Friendship Highway
   Friendship Highway
   Friendship
   How many kilometers long is
   the Friendship Highway?
kilo

3. tûk lâmân
   tûk lâmân sùûn thâwrâj
   this building
   How tall is this building?
sùûn thâwrâj
   tall how much

4. nânsîy lêmân
   nânsîy lêmân nâa kî lûa
   How many pages is
   thick, pages
   thick
   this book?
5. **khọŋ chínñí**  
   nàk  
   kiloo  
   this thing  
   heavy  
   kilo  

   How many kilos does this thing weigh?

6. **kradaan phènní**  
   nāa  
   níw  
   this board  
   thick  
   inches

   How many inches is this board?

7. **khun**  
   nàk  
   thâwràj  
   you  
   heavy, how much

   How much do you weigh?

37.4 EXERCISES

   a) Pretend you are buying material for making some article of clothing. You take the part of the buyer; another student, the seller.

   b) Discuss the dimensions of various objects in the room.

   c) One student describes a certain object by giving its dimensions and other characteristics (such as color, price, use, etc.) of it. Another student tries to guess what is being described.

   d) Find out the weight and height of everyone in the room, then make comparison such as 'John is 10 pounds heavier than Mary', etc. (**poon** 'pound' may be used.)
37.5 VOCABULARY

an       classifier for inanimate objects, careless
         speakers often use an as a substitute for
         other classifiers

aw  to want (to have) cf. tôngkaan

cháj   to use up, require, take (an amount of
         time, effort, people, etc.)

chín   piece (of anything whole), hence classifier
         for piece of clothing, furniture, bread,
         meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.

chom   to look at, to admire, look at with
         pleasure, to praise

chút   classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing),
         suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of
         ornaments, glassware, books), for a
         committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a
         team)

chýak  rope, cord, classifier for elephants

duu ạaan  to observe the operation (e.g. of a
         system), observe (something) in operation

fút     foot, English system

kaan lýak  choice, selection (as an action)

kañkeen  trousers, pants

kèsalàk  to carve or chisel (as wood)

khën    to lacquer

khọñ hâj lýak  selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)

khọñ kèsalàk  carvings

662
khroonkaan  project
khryan  engine; -ware (see below)
khryankhsee  lacquerware
khryannee  silverware
khryanphet  khryanthoon  'jewelry'
khryanthoom  nielloware
khryanthoon  things of gold
khryanthoonsamrit  bronzeware
khryn  laa  half yard
kilooc(kram)  kilogram metric system
kilooc(meeet)  kilometer metric system
kradaan  board
kram  gram metric system
lakhkrhyan  one and one half yards
lit  liter metric system
lyak  to choose or select
lyaktan  to elect (as in a political election)
maj kesaalak  woodcarvings
mai  mile
meeet  meter metric system
naa  width (for fabric)
nak  to be heavy (in weight), to be hard (as of work)
nîw  inch (English system)
nôok  external
ñaan phátthanaa  community development
nên  silver
phét  diamond
phétphlooj  jewelry
phlooj  precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
poon  pound (weight)
pramaan  about, to approximate, to estimate
prathaan  president, chairman
ráprooŋ dâj  guarantee, can guarantee
sâaj  1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line-like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sakruu  one fourth yard
samoosôn  club, association
sen (tikram)  centigram metric system
sen (timéet)  centimeter metric system
sûa  refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sûa kaŋkeen  suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)

664
sǐyanǎok  jacket
ràt  to cut, sever
thaαŋ lįak  choice (as a means)
thōm  niello process
thoɔŋlỳɑŋ  the market term for bronze
thoɔŋsǎmrīt  bronze
thuŋ  a bag
thaw  grey
thuαn  exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
tòk  to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall
to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto)
to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)
LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

38.0 BASIC DIALOG: Shopping for Toilet Articles

khonkhǎaj: sýy araj khráp
What do you want to buy?

khonsỳy: prèsnsìifan mì mày
Do you have tooth-brushes?

khonkhǎaj: mì mày khráp
We do.

khonsỳy: khčo duu nòj, dâj mày
May I see them?

khonhǎaj: nìi khráp
Here they are.

jànníi an la 8 bàat,
This kind is 8 baht each.

jànnán 12 bàat
That kind, 12.

khonsỳy: thìi thùuk kwàa nìi mì mày
You have anything cheaper?

khonkhǎaj: mày mì mày khráp
No.

khonsỳy: nàn, aw jàan pèst bàat nỳn an
In that case I'll take the 8 baht one.

khonkhǎaj: râp araj lik mày khráp
Want anything else?

khonsỳy: aw sabùu láks kɔnnyn
I'd like a bar of Lux soap.

khonkhǎaj: nɔɔk rỳ naj khráp
Imported or domestic.

khonsỳy: aw sabùu nɔɔk,
Imported, and one
lèswkɔ jaasìifan
small tube of tooth-
lòot lèk lòot nỳn,
paste, a package of
burlì klètthɔɔŋ nỳŋ sɔɔŋ
'Gold Flake' cig-
ka májkhìlit nỳŋ klàk
arettes, and a small
box of matches.
THAI BASIC COURSE

khonkhāaj: jaasīfan jīhōo araj khrāp
khongsy: araj kō dāj
khonkhāaj: nīi khrāp,
thāmōt 27 bāat
50 satānā
(khongsy sōŋ hâj
khonkhāaj sāamsīlp
bāat)
khonkhāaj: nīi khrāp, nenthoon,
sōŋ bāat hāasīlp satānā.
khorpha khaak nakhkhrāp,
wanlāŋ chēn maa ūtnūn
lik nakhkhrāp

What brand of tooth paste?
Any kind (brand).
Here you are.
That'll be ฿27.50.
The customer gives the salesman 30 baht.
Here is your change, 2.50 baht. Thank you very much.
Please come and patronize me again next time.

38.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) Noun Compounds

presnsīfan 'toothbrush': presn 'brush' + sīi 'polish' + fan 'tooth'
jaasīfan 'toothpaste': jaa 'medicine, chemical compound' + sīi + fan
sabūuhōom 'toilet soap': sabùu 'soap' + hōom 'smell sweet'
sabūusákphāa 'laundry soap, detergent': sabùu + sāk 'wash' + phāa 'clothing'
májkhlīt(faj) 'matches': máj 'wood' + khlīt 'strike, scratch' + faj 'fire'

b) jīhōo means 'brand' or 'trade name'.

Observe the use in the following sentences:
Question                  Answer
(1) rôt jîihëo araj      fôOt
     What make of car is it?  a Ford.
(2) sabùu jîihëo araj    láks
     What brand of soap is it? Lux.
(3) wîththajú jîihëo araj  aa sîl ee
     What brand of radio is it? R.C.A.

c) If araj 'what kind' is used after the noun in a question, several answers are possible, as is shown in the examples below:

Question                  Answer
(1) rôt fôOt              Ford
     rôt araj
     rôt ameerikan           An American car
     rôt sapOot              A sport car
(2) sabùu araj             sabùu hôm
     toilet soap
     sabùu láks              Lux soap

d) Brand names are sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising, as in the following examples:

(1) sabùu traa nôk bûew    Parrot brand soap
(2) kratîknâm traa nôkjûun  Peacock brand thermos
(3) phâa traa lâukthâo      Peach brand cloth
(4) phënsîân traa krâtàaj  Rabbit brand records
e) In the case of some very well-known products the trade name may be the main identifying feature of the name:

(1) jaa traa sỳa Tiger (brand) balm

(2) jaa hǭm traa máa Horse brand nice-smelling inhalants

f) ǹ３ok and naj.

(khǭŋ) ǹ３ok is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand.

(khǭŋ) naj is used to refer to products made in Thailand.

Observe the following examples:

(1) sabùu ǹ３ok 'Imported soap'
sabùu naj 'local soap'
sabùu thaj 'Thai soap'

(2) nákrian ǹ３ok 'Thais who were educated abroad'
nákrian naj 'Thais educated in Thailand'

But notice the difference in usage in the following examples:

khonnaok 'outsider' or 'layman'

khonnaj 'insider'
38.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) **Noun Classifiers**

In 4.1 you were given a list of classifiers and a general description of classifiers. In succeeding lessons you have been introduced to more of them. You are now aware that in many types of Noun Phrases the classifier must occur with the noun; therefore, it is imperative that you know which classifier is associated with which noun.

In general it is probably just as simple to learn the classifier of a noun at the same time that you learn the noun (just as you might learn the gender class of a noun in German or French) without reference to the meaning of the noun. However, since there are some cases in which the classifier of a noun is predictable from the meaning of the noun, a more nearly complete list of classifiers is given below. This may help you remember the ones you have already had better, since it's easier to see the 'logic' of the system if you already know the nouns and their classifiers, and it should help you guess which classifier to use with nouns you will learn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classifier</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) khon</td>
<td>Ordinary people, names of professions, members of the family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>khruu 2 khon</strong> 'two teachers'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>luk 3 khon</strong> 'three children'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) on</td>
<td>Buddha images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) tua</td>
<td>Non-human things with human parts (legs, arms, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>māa 2 tua</strong> 'two dogs'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>kaankeen 1 tua</strong> 'a pair of pants'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An exception is <strong>burlī nyn tua</strong> 'a cigarette'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1The information given here is taken from Noss, 106. Examples have been added to make the points clearer.
(4) chabàp  

นั้งยี่ปิ่น น้ํา ชั้น ปั๊ม  'one newspaper'

(5) mét  

ผัด น้ํา ผัด  'one diamond'

สัมภาริน น้ํา ผัด  'one aspirin tablet'

(6) kɔɔn  

สับู่ น้ํา คอง  'a bar of soap'

น้ำมัน คอง  'a lump, cube, or block of ice'

เฝ้า น้ํา คอง  'a lump of rice'

(7) baj  

ตัวแจ่ น้ํา บัด  'one refrigerator'

ท่าน น้ํา บัด  'one pail'

(8) baj  

รูป น้ํา บัด  'one photo' or 'one picture'

ทอนาบะต์ น้ํา บัด  'one bank note'

ทอนาบะต์ บัด แล้ว  'a 5-baht bill (money)'

(9) khrýañ is usually used with complex equipment, such as an engine, or a modern invention with many parts.

khrýañjon น้ํา khrýañ  'one engine'

ทอร์รัสป์ น้ํา khrýañ  'one telephone'

(10) thíi is sometimes used with simple equipment. Notice the difference in usage between thíi and khrýañ in the following examples:

1. khrýañ pèat krapñ  'An electric can opener'

thíi pèat krapñ  'an ordinary can opener'

2. khrýañ tiì khàj  'An electric (egg) beater'

thíi tiì khàj  'an ordinary (egg) beater'
(11) ห่อ refers to packages or things wrapped in paper.

    burli nỳ̄n hòo 'a carton of cigarettes'

(12) กล่อง refers to a small carton or plastic box.

    sabùu nỳ̄n klòn 'a box of soap'

(13)  an is a very common classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers. The examples given in the drills are the nouns that are usually used with an.

(14) With many noun compounds the classifier and its noun referent are identical. Some examples are:

    tãújen nỳ̄n tâu¹ one refrigerator
    chútrapkhè̂k nỳ̄n chú̂ one set of living room furniture
    tawkéès nỳ̄n taw one gas stove
    rùupmyaŋthaj nỳ̄n rùup¹ one picture of Thailand
    khıyānáⁿkphâa nỳ̄n khıyān one washing machine
    bajmáaj nỳ̄n baj one leaf
    tíaŋ nỳ̄n tíaŋ one bed

b) Nominalizations

th commanded 'that which, the one(s) which, such ones as, etc.' serves as a nominalizer (i.e. an agent for creating nouns) of Verb Phrases (and Sentences) as in the following example:

¹baj may also be used.
### THAI BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominalizer</td>
<td>Verb Phrase</td>
<td>Determiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thîî</td>
<td>thûuk kwàa</td>
<td>nîî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(that which)</td>
<td>(is cheaper)</td>
<td>(this)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'that which is cheaper'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 38.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill** (Classifiers)

1. an
   - pâsîân nỳŋ an
   - thîî pèèkrap ön nỳŋ an
   - thîî tîi khàj l an
   - tawrîl l an
   - phâtlom l an
   - One toothbrush
   - one can opener
   - One (egg) beater
   - one iron
   - one electric fan

2. dâm
   - pàakaa l dâm
   - one pen

3. thêñ
   - dinsôo l thêñ
   - one pencil

4. lòot
   - jaâsîifan l lòot
   - one tube of toothpaste

5. sôn
   - burî l sôn
   - one package of cigarettes
   - sônçôtmaaj l sôn
   - one envelope

6. hòò
   - burî l hòò
   - One carton of cigarettes
   - màjkhîl l hòò
   - one big package of matches

673
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Thai Word 1</th>
<th>Thai Word 2</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>phèn</td>
<td>kradàat l phèn</td>
<td>one piece of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rùup l phèn</td>
<td>one (copy of a) photo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kradaan l phèn</td>
<td>one piece of board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>phënenthîi l phèn</td>
<td>one copy of a map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>kàon</td>
<td>sabùu 1 kàon</td>
<td>one bar of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>námtaan 1 kàon</td>
<td>one lump/cube of sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>námkhësêñ 1 kàon</td>
<td>a piece of ice, an ice cube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>chabàp</td>
<td>náŋsýyphim 1 chabàp</td>
<td>one newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cōtmjàaj 1 chabàp</td>
<td>one letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>lèm</td>
<td>náŋsýy 1 lèm</td>
<td>one book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>samùt 1 lèm</td>
<td>one textbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>baj</td>
<td>krapǎw 1 baj</td>
<td>one pocketbook, handbag, briefcase, suitcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(thonabàt) baj la róoj</td>
<td>one 100 baht bank-note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rùup 1 baj</td>
<td>One (example of a) picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tûu 1 baj</td>
<td>one cabinet (as a container)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>tua</td>
<td>tó 1 tua</td>
<td>one table/desk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tó rîitphàa 1 tua</td>
<td>one ironing board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kàwìi nỳñ tua</td>
<td>one chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sỳa 1 tua</td>
<td>one blouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kaāŋkeen 1 tua</td>
<td>one pair of pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kaproon 1 tua</td>
<td>one (woman's) skirt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

674
13. khr̄yān
witthajú l khr̄yān
thiiwii, theorathát | 1 khr̄yān
khr̄yānsákhphāa l khr̄yān
khr̄yānpēet krapdōn l khr̄yān
khr̄yān prāpaakāat l khr̄yān
one radio
one TV set
one washing machine
one electric can opener
one air conditioner

14. chút
khr̄yānkhrua l chút
s̄yaphāa l chút
chútrápkhesk l chút
one set of kitchen equipment
one suit of clothes
one set of living-room furniture
THAI BASIC COURSE

บุหรี่มวน (tua muan)

มัจจุลิต (faj) นิณก้าน

บุหรี่นิณ ซอง

มัจจุลิต (faj) นิณคลา

บุหรี่นิณห่อ

มัจจุลิต (faj) นิณห่อ
### Response Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. preensỳifan nyñ</td>
<td>sỳy araj khráp</td>
<td>(aw) preensỳifan nyñ an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toothbrush</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>(I want) one toothbrush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. jaasỳifan sọọŋ</td>
<td>sỳy araj khráp</td>
<td>(aw) jaasỳifan sọọŋ 1ọọt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toothpaste</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>(I want) two tubes of toothpaste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. burli sọọŋ</td>
<td>sỳy araj khráp</td>
<td>(sỳy) burli sọọŋ sọọŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cigarettes</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>(I want) two packages of cigarettes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sabùu họom săam</td>
<td>sỳy araj khráp</td>
<td>(sỳy) sabùu họom săam kọọn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet soap</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>(I want) three bars of toilet soap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. màjkhlìt nyñ</td>
<td>ráp araj khráp</td>
<td>(sỳy) màjkhlìt nyñ klàk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matches</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>(I want) one box of matches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sabùu láks jàannọok sọọŋ</td>
<td>aw araj khráp</td>
<td>aw sabùu láks jàannọok sọọŋ kọọn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imported Lux toilet soap</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>I want two bars of imported Lux toilet soap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. пресэнъифан  
khanàat lék  
nỳŋ  
Small toothbrush  
One  

8. jaasъифан  
lìbot lék jaànnūk,  
nỳŋ  
Imported toothpaste, small tube  
One  

a) Expansion Drill  

1. sabùu nỳŋ kèon  
sabùu həom nỳŋ kèon  
sabùu (həom) láks nỳŋ kèon  
sabùu (həom) láks jaànnūk  
nỳŋ kèon  
One bar of soap.  
One bar of toilet soap.  
One bar of Lux toilet soap.  
One bar of imported Lux toilet soap.  

2. pàakkâa nỳŋ dàam  
pàakkâa pàakkâe nỳŋ dàam  
pàakkâa pàakkâe jaàndīi  
nỳŋ dàam  
pàakkâa pàakkâe jaàndīi,  
khanàat lék nỳŋ dàam.  
One pen  
One Parker pen  
One good Parker pen  
One good Parker pen, small size.
3.  
jaasǐifan นี่ย่ ล่อต
jaasǐifan ajpaanaa นี่ย่ ล่อต
jaasǐifan ajpaanaa jàamNEok นี่ย่ ล่อต
jaasǐifan ajpaanaa khanaat jàamNEok ล่อต
jàł นี่ย่ ล่อต
One toothpaste
One Ipana toothpaste
One imported Ipana toothpaste
One imported Ipana toothpaste, big size/large tube

4.  
praasǐifan นี่ย่ an
praasǐifan dółtēe wès นี่ย่ an
praasǐifan dółtēe wès jàaN soon นี่ย่ an
One toothbrush
One Dr. West toothbrush
One soft Dr. West toothbrush

5.  
burli นี่ย่ soon
burli thaj นี่ย่ soon
burli thaj jàandií นี่ย่ soon
burli thaj jàandií jīhīō arajkōdāj นี่ย่ soon
One package of cigarettes
One package of Thai cigarettes
One package of good Thai cigarettes
One package of Thai cigarettes of any brand

6.  
rót นี่ย่ khan
rót ameerikan นี่ย่ khan
rót ameerikan suājsuāj นี่ย่ khan
rót ameerikan suājsuāj jàandií นี่ย่ khan
rót ameerikan suājsuāj jàandií khanaatjàj นี่ย่ khan
rót ameerikan suājsuāj jàandií khanaatjàj, jīhīō arajkōdāj นี่ย่ khan
One car
One American car
One beautiful American car
One good, beautiful American car
One big good and beautiful American car
One big good and beautiful American car of any make.
d) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thīi thùuk kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Do you have anything cheaper?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi dīi kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Do you have anything better?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi suǎj kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Beautiful, pretty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi pheən kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Do you have anything prettier?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Do you have anything more expensive?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi jàj kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Big</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi lék kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Do you have anything bigger?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Do you have anything smaller?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi nâakwāaŋ kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Wiade (Fabric)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thīi māj kwàa nīi mii máj</td>
<td>Do you have anything wider?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>Do you have anything newer?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sentence Expansion Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Continued Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong> <em>preenśīfan jāṅnīi</em> phēŋ paj</td>
<td><em>preenśīfan jāṅnīi phēŋ paj,</em> thī thūk kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This kind of toothbrush is too expensive.</td>
<td>This kind of toothbrush is too expensive. Do you have anything cheaper?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2.</strong> rōt khannīi māj suāj</td>
<td>rōt khannīi māj suāj, thī suāj kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This car is not beautiful.</td>
<td>This car is not beautiful. Do you have anything better looking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong> bān lānnīi lék keen paj</td>
<td>bān lānnīi lék keen paj, thī jāj kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This house is too small.</td>
<td>This house is too small. Do you have anything bigger?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.</strong> phānnīi nāakhēsp keen paj</td>
<td>phānnīi nāakhēsp keen paj, thī kwāa kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This fabric is too narrow.</td>
<td>This fabric is too narrow. Do you have anything wider?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.</strong> kaakkeen tuanīi kāw paj</td>
<td>kaakkeen tuanīi kāw paj, thī māj kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These pants are too old.</td>
<td>These pants are too old. Do you have anything newer?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.</strong> sūa tuanīi jāj paj</td>
<td>sūa tuanīi jāj paj, thī jēk kwāa nīi mīi māj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This shirt is too big.</td>
<td>This shirt is too big. Do you have anything smaller?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7.</strong> nānsyīy lēmnīi jāa kēen paj</td>
<td>nānsyīy lēmnīi jāa kēen paj, thī nāaj kwāa nīi mīi māj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This book is too difficult.</td>
<td>This book is too difficult. Do you have anything easier?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
38.4 EXERCISES

a) Have one student take the part of a store clerk and another that of a customer. Have them go through the routine of purchasing various items, such as:

(a) a pack of cigarettes, (b) two bars of toilet soap,
(c) a tube of toothpaste, (d) some matches, etc.

The clerk asks the brand, kind, and size the customer wants. When he is told, he indicates what the price is. Then the customer inquires if there is anything cheaper (better, etc.). Then he gives the clerk a bill and asks for change.

38.5 VOCABULARY

aa sii ee R.C.A.
ajpaanaa Ipana
an classifier for inanimate objects
ésphajrin aspirin
on classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen
òon soft, tender
ùtnún to support, assist (financially) to patronize
bajmáaj leaf
dóktē wés Dr. West
fan tooth
fòot a Ford (brand name)
hòo carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper

682
hōm  to smell sweet
jaa  medicine, chemical compound
jaa hōm  nice-smelling inhalants
jaasīfan  toothpaste
jiāhō  brand or trade name
kāan  classifier for matches
kaproon  woman's skirt
khīt  to strike, scratch
khonnaj  insider
khonnōk  outsider or layman
khryānjōn  engine
khryān pēt krapōn  an electric can opener
khryān sākphāa  washing machine
khryān tīi khāj  an electric (egg) beater
klāk  small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klètthoon  Gold Flake(name of cigarettes)
klōŋ  a small carton or plastic box
kḥōn  bump, cube, bar classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks or coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money
kratāaj  rabbit

683
kratìknàm  thermos bottle
làks  Lux (brand name)
lòot  classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lùukthóò  peach (a Chinese loan word)
máa  horse
máj  wood
májkhlíit (faj)  matches
mét  classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
muán  classifier for cigarette, cigar
(khôñ)naj  is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
nákriàñ naj  Thais educated in Thailand
nákriàñ nòok  Thais who were educated abroad
nók  bird
nókjùum  Peacock
nókkèsw  Parrot
(khôñ)nòok  is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
nǹenthôn  change (money returned)
páak kês  Parker
phältlóm  electric fan
phèsniàñ  records (phonograph)
prèsèn  brush
preensýifan  toothbrush
sabùuhɔom  toilet soap
sabùu(láks)  (Lux) soap
sabùu naj  local soap
sabùu nöok  imported soap
sabùu sákphâa  laundry soap
sabùu thaj  Thai soap
sák  to wash (cloth only), to launder
satàaŋ  satang
síí  polish
soon  classifier for cigarettes or envelope
soonçoťmāaj  envelope
sýa  tiger
taw  stove
tawkéêes  gas stove
tawrîit  iron (for clothing)
thãŋ  pail
thîiwií  T.V.
thîi  classifier for simple equipment
thîi pèet krapõn  an ordinary can opener
thîi tîí khàj  an ordinary (egg) beater
thonabât  bank note
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thoon</td>
<td>to give change (money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoorathát</td>
<td>T.V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traa</td>
<td>brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanlän</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON THIRTY-NINE

39.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Fruit

khonsýy: sômníi kháaj jaññaj How much are these oranges?
mêskháa: lóo la slèp hàa bèat khà Fifteen baht a kilo.
khonsýy: kiloo nyñ mìi kli luûk How many oranges in a kilo?
mêskháa: raaw hòk cèt luûk Around 6 or 7.
khonsýy: lóo la slèp bèat dâj maj How about 10 baht a kilo?
mêskháa: mâj dâj khà Impossible.
níi sôm jàandii nakhà This is a very good kind of orange.
rótdii wâansanìt They have good, unusually sweet flavor.

khonsýy: nán slèp sômè bèat kôlèewkan na Then make it 12 baht.
aw kiloo nyñ I'll take one kilo.
(mêskháa sôn sôm hàj) (The saleslady hands over the oranges.)
mêskháa: ca râp araj lík màjk hà Athletics else?
khonsýy: sàpparôt níi lûuk thâwrâj How much are these pineapples each?
mêskháa: sli bèat khà four baht.
khonsýy: sânam bèat dâj màj Is three O.K.?
mēskhāa: màj dâj khà
        sìì bàat khàat tua
Can't do it.

khonsýy: aw lūuk nyŋ
I'll take one.

chūaj lỳak lūuk diidii
hâj dūaj
Pick out a good one
for me.

mēskhāa: nǐi khà, thàmòt sîp
hôk bàat thùan
Here it is. That
makes 16 baht exactly
altogether.

(khonsýy sóñ bâj la
rōoj hâj mēskhāa)
(The buyer hands the
saleslady a 100 baht
bill.)

mēskhāa: khùn mii bènjíj màj
khà
ey have any smaller
bills?
dichán màj mii thoon
I don't have any change.

khonsýy: màj mii lēaj khrâp
No, I don't have
any at all.

mēskhāa: nán rōo sâk pradyaw
nákha
Then please wait a
minute.
dichán ca paj lēsk
maa hâj
I'll go get some
change for you.

39.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

Types of Noun Phrases

a) Noun+ Stative Verb(s)

With this type of construction the reference is non-
specific; i.e. it refers to any one or more units of
the whole class.
1. Noun + Stative Verb

ร่ำ มา 'new cars'

Here the reference is to a particular type of object as a class.

2. Noun + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Depending on the context, reduplication of the stative verb may result in

(a) 'Softening' the meaning of the stative verb,

ผ่อม เห็น ร่ำ ศิริ ขาด ขาด ผ่าน ผ่าน กhan นยน
'I saw a whitish car pass by.'

(b) strengthening the meaning of the stative verb, or

ร่ำ ขนนิ่ม มา จา ผาน ผ่ม ผัก ดา ร่ำ จา จา
'This car is not big enough. I would like a really big car.'

(c) it may indicate that the noun it occurs with is plural.

ขา วาน แป้น ศิริ ศิริ 'He has beautiful houses.'

In all of these constructions the reference is to general rather than specific objects.

b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb(s)

Reference is usually to one object.

1. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb

Reference is one specific object.

น้ำสกี้ เล่ม จา 'the big book'

2. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Reference is any one of a number of objects.

ภัปร่ำต เลือก ดี ดี 'any good pineapple'

689
In certain situations reduplication can result in
(a) 'softening' the meaning of the stative verb
chūaj lûk lûk jàj jàj hâj lûk nûn
'Please choose a rather large one for me.'

39.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

1. som sâam  | lûuk
   baj       | 3 oranges
   phôn

2. som oo nûn | lûuk
   baj       | 1 pomelo
   phôn

3. klûaj nûn wûi
   or sîi
   baj       | lûuk
   or
   phôn       | 4 bananas

4. mamûan sôn | lûuk
   phôn       | 2 mangoes
   baj

5. månkhût nûn
   phôn       | 1 mangosteen
   baj

6. chomphûu sôn
   phôn       | 2 rose apples
   baj

690
7. ตองมือ นิ้ง  |  ลูก  |  1 watermelon
          | พื้น  |
          | บ้าง
8. มะลักซ์ นิ้ง  |  ลูก  |  1 papaya
          | พื้น  |
          | บ้าง
9. ลังซ่าฉัต นิ้ง
   or
   สิปสิล  |  ลูก  |  1 bunch of langsa
   or
          | พื้น  |  14 langsa
          | บ้าง
10. ทุรัน นิ้ง  |  ลูก  |  1 durian
     | พื้น  |
     | บ้าง
11. สำรอก นิ้ง  |  ลูก  |  1 pineapple
     | พื้น  |
     | บ้าง
12. หน่อย นิ้ง
    or
   ห่า  |  ลูก  |  1 bunch of rambuttans
   or
   ห่า  | พื้น  |
   บ้าง  |  5 rambuttans
   ลูก
b) **Sentence Construction Drill**  (See Fruit Chart.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sôm, jaññaj</td>
<td>sôm nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell these oranges? (by weight or quantity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sôm oo, lûuk</td>
<td>sôm oo nîi lûuk la thâwrâj</td>
<td>How much are these grapefruit apiece?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. klûaj, jaññaj</td>
<td>klûaj nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell these bananas?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. mamûan, lûuk</td>
<td>mamûan nîi lûuk la thawrâj</td>
<td>How much are these mangoes apiece?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. mañkhût, jaññaj</td>
<td>mañkhût nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell these mangosteens?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. chomphûu, jaññaj</td>
<td>chomphûu nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell these rose apples?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. tësrûmo, lûuk</td>
<td>tësrûmo nîi lûuk la thâwrâj</td>
<td>How much are watermelons each?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. malakoo, lûuk</td>
<td>malakoo nîi lûuk la thâwrâj</td>
<td>How much are papayas apiece?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. laangsaat, jaññaj</td>
<td>laangsaat nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell langsa?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. thûrian, jaññaj</td>
<td>thûrian nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell durians?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. sąparôt, lûuk</td>
<td>sąparôt nîi lûuk la thâwrâj</td>
<td>How much are pineapples apiece?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. nó, jaññaj</td>
<td>nó nîi khâaj jaññaj</td>
<td>How do you sell rambuttans?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

692
THAI BASIC COURSE

THAI FRUIT

693
c) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>naïm naïm</td>
<td>chūaj lûak lûuk naïm naïm hâj dûaj Please choose a good one for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàân wàân</td>
<td>chūaj lûak lûuk wàân wàân hâj dûaj Please choose a very sweet one for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàj jàj</td>
<td>chūaj lûak lûuk jàj jàj hâj dûaj Please choose a rather big one for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùk sùk</td>
<td>chūaj lûak lûuk sùk sùk hâj dûaj Please choose a really ripe one for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ripe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sòt sòt</td>
<td>chūaj lûak lûuk sòt sòt hâj dûaj Please choose a really fresh one for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d) **Expansion Drill**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sàparót lûuk dii dii</td>
<td>A good pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàparót lûuk dii dii wàân wàân</td>
<td>A good and sweet pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàparót lûuk too too</td>
<td>A big pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàparót lûuk too too wàân wàân</td>
<td>A big and sweet pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thúrian lûuk too too</td>
<td>A big durian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thúrian lûuk too too ròt dii dii</td>
<td>A big, good-tasting durian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. mánkhút lûuk ençaam
mánkhút lûuk ençaam
rót dîi dîi
A pretty, good-tasting
mangosteen

5. mamûan lûuk too too
mamûan lûuk too too
sûk sûk
A big, ripe mango

6. mamûan lûuk too too
mamûan lûuk too too
sôt sôt
A big, fresh mango

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

**Cue**

**Pattern**

chûaj lûak sàparôt lûuk dîi
dîi hāj lûuk nỳn
Please choose a good pineapple
for me.

1. sôm oo
chûaj lûak sôm oo lûuk dîi
dîi hûik nỳn
Please choose a good pomelo for
me.

2. mamûan, jàj, sàam
chûaj lûak mamûan lûuk baj jàj
jàj hûj sàam baj
Please choose three (rather)
big mangoes for me.

3. thûrian, rót dîi, nỳn
chûaj lûak thûrian rót dîi dîi
hûj lûuk nỳn
Please choose a good durian for
me.

4. jàj, sòson
chûaj lûak thûrian baj jàj jàj
rót dîi dîi hûj sòson lûuk
Please choose two big and good
durians for me.
5. เท่าน้อย, ว่าง, น้อย

chụaj ลี่อัก เท่าน้อย ลูก จ้ำ

จ้ำ ว่าง ว่าง ห้าจ ลูก น้อย

Please choose a big sweet
watermelon for me.

6. มะเขือเทศ, ผาเม, น้อย กิโล

chụaj มะเขือเทศ ลูก ผาเม ผาเม

ห้าจ กิโล น้อย

Please choose a kilo of pretty
mangoes for me.

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue                  Pattern

chụaj ลี่อัก นำิวยอิ่งต์ ลูก ปืน ปืน

Please choose a good pineapple
for me.

1. ส้ม ออ

chụaj ลี่อัก ส้ม ออ ลูก ปืน ปืน

Please choose a good pomelo
for me.

2. ดิวเรียียน

durian

chụaj ลี่อัก ดิวเรียียน ลูก ปืน ปืน

Please choose a good durian for
me.

3. ส้าม

chụaj ลี่อัก ดิวเรียียน ลูก ปืน ส้าม ลูก

Please choose three good durians
for me.

4. จ้ำ

chụaj ลี่อัก ดิวเรียียน ลูก จ้ำ จ้ำ

ห้าจ ส้าม ลูก

Please choose three rather big
durians for me.
| 5. | jàj, rót dii | chûaj lûak thûrian lûuk jàj jàj rót dii dii hâj sàam lûuk | Please choose three rather big delicious durians for me. |
|    | big, of good flavor |             |                                        |
| 6. | sỳy | chûaj sỳy thûrian lûuk jàj jàj rót dii dii hâj sàam lûuk | Please buy three rather big delicious durians for me. |
|    | buy |             |                                        |
| 7. | mankhút, ñaam mangosteens | chûaj sỳy mankhút lûuk ñaam ñaam rót dii dii hâj sàam lûuk | Please buy three pretty, good tasting mangosteens for me. |
|    | pretty |             |                                        |
| 8. | nyû kiloo | chûaj sỳy mankhút lûuk ñaam ñaam rót dii dii hâj kiloo nyû | Please buy a kilo of pretty, delicious mangosteens for me. |
|    | one kilo |             |                                        |
| 9. | sîp bàat | chûaj sỳy mankhút lûuk ñaam ñaam rót dii dii hâj sîp bàat | Please buy ten baht worth of pretty, delicious mangosteens for me. |
|    | ten baht |             |                                        |
| 10. | mamuân, too wàan mango, large, sweet | chûaj sỳy mamuân lûuk too too wàan wàan hâj sîp bàat | Please buy ten baht of sweet, big mangoes for me. |
|    |           |             |                                        |
| 11. | malakoo, sùk, too papaya, ripe, big | chûaj sỳy malakoo lûuk too too sùk sùk hâj sîp bàat | Please buy ten baht of big, ripe papayas for me. |
### g) Sentence Construction Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun mâj mîi bêñjêj</td>
<td>lêek</td>
<td>khun mâj mîi bêñjêj rêkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rêkhráp</td>
<td></td>
<td>phôm capaj lêek maa hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You don't have any change?</td>
<td>to change</td>
<td>You don't have any change?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I'll go get some change for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. khun ca thaan</td>
<td>sîy</td>
<td>khun ca thaan kâafsê rêkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kâafsê rêkhráp</td>
<td></td>
<td>phôm ca paj sîy maa hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You'd like a cup of coffee?</td>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>You'd like a cup of coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I'll go and buy some for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. khun mâj mîi</td>
<td>aw</td>
<td>khun mâj mîi nánsîy rêkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánsîy rêkhráp</td>
<td></td>
<td>phôm ca paj aw maa hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You don't have a book?</td>
<td>to get</td>
<td>You don't have a book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I'll go get one for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. khun tôŋkaan thêksîî</td>
<td>rîak</td>
<td>khun tôŋkaan thêksîî rêkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rêkhráp</td>
<td></td>
<td>phôm ca paj rîak maa hâj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want a taxi?</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>Do you want a taxi?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I'll go and call one for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. khun têŋkaan môo rêkjhrâp
   Do you want a doctor?

6. khun ca nâŋ mâj
   Would you like to sit down?

7. khun ca thaan mâj
   Would you like to eat?

8. khun ca lêsk nêŋ mâj
   Would you like to change money?

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phôm mâj mîi bêŋjôj. phôm ca têŋ paj lêsk nêŋ
   I don't have small bank notes. I'll have to go change some money.
2. khun mii běnjǎj máj. khǎo lēsk sák rǒo j bāat.
   Do you have any change? Please change a hundred Baht.

3. khun mii sèet satǎaŋ máj. khǎo lēsk sák hǎa bāat
   Do you have any change? Could I have change for five Baht?

4. chōaj paj lēsk nən maa hǎj sák jǐīhör bāat
   Please go and get twenty Baht change for me.

5. phōm mii nən dōolāa jùu jǐīhör rǐ han. ca lēsk pen nənthaj
dǎj thǎwraŋ
   I have twenty dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?

6. khun sǎap máj khrǎp wǎa thěwǎl mii thǐlēskŋən máj.
   Do you know if there are any money changers around here?

7. chaawnaa aw khǎaw paj lēsk maa pen khǒŋchǎj
   The farmers took the rice and traded it for things.

8. jāa aw phimśən paj lēsk kɐp klyə.
   Don't trade (exchange) smelling salts for salt.

   (Do not trade valuable things for worthless things.
   A Thai proverb)

   1) Expansion Drill

1. lēsk  exchange

   lēsk kɐp  exchange with

   lēsk ka khǒŋ  exchange with things

   lēsk nən ka khǒŋ  exchange money for things

700
2. ลีก

ลีกเงิน  
(1) want to exchange ten dollars.

3. ลีก

เธอ ลีก  
Please exchange.

เธอ ลีก เลนจ่อจ  
Please change for small bank notes.

เธอ ลีก เลนจ่อจ ลีก สักจากบาท  
Please give me 100 Baht change.

4. ลีก

เธอ ลีก  
Please exchange.

เธอ ลีก เทิตสกาน  
Please exchange for coins.

เธอ ลีก เทิตสกาน ลีก เลนจ่อจ ลีกสักจากบาท  
Please exchange five Baht into coins?

5. ลีก

ลีกเงิน  
trade

ลีกรถเงิน  
trade cars

ลีกรถเงิน, ลีกใหม่  
How would you like to trade cars?

6. ลีก

เอาข้าวผัดแลกเงิน  
Take rice and exchange it.

เอาข้าวผัดแลกเงิน, กะถะนิช  
Take rice and exchange it for things.

ชาวน้าเอาข้าวผัดแลกเงิน, ลีกกับกะถะนิช  
The farmers trade rice for things.
7. lêsk
aw paj lêsk               exchange
aw paj lêsk maa            Take it and exchange it.
aw khâaw paj lêsk maa      been to exchange something
pen khŎngchaj              has been to exchange rice for
                           useful things
8. lêsk
aw paj lêsk               exchange
aw rôt kàw paj lêsk        Take it and exchange it.
aw rôt kàw paj lêsk maa    Take the old car to exchange it.
pen rôt măj                have been to trade the old car
                           in for a new one

Exercise (on lêsk)

1. cháawnaa mii tès khâaw. thâa khâw tônkaan khŎngchaj tès
khâw măj mii ŋen sỳy. khâw ca tham jaŋŋaj
A farmer has only rice. If he wants other things but he
doesn't have money to buy them, what can he do?

2. khun ca tôn hâj ŋen khâa thékśl slphâa bâat. khun mii tès
baj la rōc. thékśl măj mii thoon. khun ca tham jaŋŋaj
You have to pay fifteen Baht for taxi fare. You have only
a 100 Baht bank note. The driver doesn't have any change.
What do you do?

3. khun mii tès ŋen doon lâa. khun tônkaan ŋen bâat, khun ca
tham jaŋŋaj
You have only dollars. You want some baht. What do you do?

4. thââ ŋen doon lâa thawkâp jîisîp bâat. thââ khun mii ŋen
hâasîp doon lâa, khun ca lêsâk ŋen bâat dâj thâwrâj
If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht; if you have
fifty dollars, how many baht do you get?
5. khun phichaj ca paj ameerikaa. khaw aw nen paj laes khip thanakhaan haa phan baat. thaa nyh doon laa thaw kaap jisip baat. khun phichaj daj nen doon laa thawraaj

Mr. Pichai is going to America. He went to the bank to exchange money for 5,000 baht. If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht, how many dollars does Mr. Pichai get?

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phom sy khoon raakhaa slip peset baat. phom haj nen khaw paj jisip baat. khaw thooc nen haj phom sơn baat.

I made a purchase for 18 baht. I gave him twenty baht. He gave me two baht change.

2. khaa theksaa slip sơn baat. phom haj nen theksaaj paj slip haa baat khaw thooc maa haj phom sơn baat. khaw thooc nen haj phom khataj paj nyny baat.

The taxi fare is 12 baht. I gave the driver 15 baht. He gave me two baht change. He shortchanged me one baht.

3. phom mil tees baj la rooj, maj mii bengjai. miskhaa maj mii nen thooc, phom leaj ten paj jisek bengjai maa haj khaw

I had only one hundred baht bank notes. I didn't have any smaller bank notes. The vendor didn't have any change. So, I had to go get some change for her.

4. khun khuan ca daj nenthoon sơn baat tees khaw thooc haj khun sơn baat hasip. khaw thooc nen haj khun keen maa hasip sataaan

You should have got two baht change but he gave you the change for two baht and fifty satang. He gave you fifty satang too much in change.

5. khoon raakhaa thamnot peset slip sii baat. phom haj nen khaw paj rooj nyh. phom khuan ca daj nenthoon thawraaj

The goods cost altogether 84 baht. I gave him 100 baht. How much change should I get?

703
k) Expansion Drill

1. thoon
   thoonŋen
   thoon ŋen hâj khun
   thoon ŋen hâj khun sāam bāat
   khāw thoon ŋen hâj khun sāam bāat
   To give change
   To give change
   To give you change
   To give you 3 baht change
   He gave you 3 baht change.

2. thoon
   thoon maa
   thoon maa hâj phōm
   thoon maa hâj phōm sāam bāat
   tēŋ thoon maa hâj phōm sāam bāat
   khun tēŋ thoon maa hâj phōm sāam bāat, thūuk māj khrāp
   To give change
   To give change (to me)
   To give me change
   To give me 3 baht change
   Should give me 3
   You should have given me 3 baht change, right?

3. khāat
   khāat paj
   khāat paj sōŋ bāat
   ŋen khāat paj sōŋ bāat
   thoon ŋen maa khāat paj sōŋ bāat
   thoon ŋen maa hâj phōm khāat paj sōŋ bāat
   khun thoon ŋen maa hâj phōm khāat paj sōŋ bāat
   To be lacking
   To be lacking
   Two baht too little
   Two baht too little change
   Gave 2 baht too little in change
   Gave me 2 baht too little in change.
   You shortchanged me 2 baht.
4.  **kēen**
    
    kēen maa hâa sîlp sataaŋ
    
    นเณร ค่านี้มามากเกิน
    
    thoon นเณร เค 넘어
    
    ขอเงินนี้เกิน
    
    khun thoon นเณร เค
    
    เหมาเกิน
    
    Too much
    
    Fifty satang too much
    
    The money is 50 satangs too much.
    
    Gave 50 satang too much in change
    
    You gave 50 satang too much in the change.

5.  **thoon**
    
    to give change
    
    change
    
    get change
    
    haven't got change yet
    
    I haven't got change yet.

**Excercise**

1.  **khun sîy khoong raakhāa sîl sâm bâat. khun hâj nên khoankhâaj pâj jîisîlp bâat. khâw tôn thoon nên hâj khun klâ bâat.**
    
    You bought 13 baht worth of goods. You gave the seller 20 baht. How much must he give you back in change?

2.  **khun sîy phônlamâaj ruam thàgmôt jîî sîlp êt bîat. khun hâj bâj la jîisîlp kâp bâj la hâa khâw pâj. khâw tôn thoon nên hâj khun thâwrâj.**
    
    You bought fruit for 21 baht. You gave her one 20 baht bank note and one 5 baht bank note. How much is she supposed to give you back in change?

3.  **khun sîy khoong raakhāa kâawsîlp cêt bîat cêt sîlp sataaŋ. khun hâj bâj la rôoj khâw pâj. khun khuan dâj nên thoon thâwrâj.**
    
    You bought the goods for 97.70 baht. You gave the seller a 100 baht bank note. How much change should you get back?
4. khun sýy phâamâj tháñmòt säämróo j sîp bàat. khun hâj baj la róoj khonkhâaj sîi baj. khonkhâaj thcoon nên maa hâj khun pëst sîp bàat. khâw thcoon nên hâj khun khàat paj thâwrâj.

You bought 310 baht worth of Thai silk. You gave the salesman four 100 baht bank notes. The salesman gave you 80 baht change. How much did he shortchange you?

5. khun sýy khóon raakhaa sääm bàat khun hâj baj la hâa khonkhâaj paj. khâw thcoon maa hâj khun sääm bàat. khâw thcoon nên keen maa thâwrâj.

You bought some things for 3 baht. You gave the salesman one 5 baht bank note. He gave you 3 baht change. How much extra change did you get?

1) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ca râp araj</td>
<td>lik máj</td>
<td>Would you like anything else?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca sýy araj</td>
<td>lik máj</td>
<td>Would you like to buy anything else?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca tham araj</td>
<td>lik máj</td>
<td>Would you like to do anything else?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj nâj</td>
<td>lik máj</td>
<td>Would you like to go anywhere else?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca paj hâa khraj</td>
<td>lik máj</td>
<td>Would you like to see anyone else?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

706
5. duu araj  
ca duu araj lik maj.
Would you like to look at anything else?

6. paj thura thfinaj  
ca paj thura thfinaj lik maj
Would you like to go (on business) anywhere else?

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (lik: 'else')
1. khun paj haa khaw lesw. khun ca paj haa khraj lik
You have seen him. Is there anybody else you'll see?

2. nokcak khun coon lesw, khun rucak khraj lik banaaj
Besides John, who else do you know?

3. syy pha set lesw, khun jaak ca syy araj lik maj
After we finish shopping for material, is there anything else you'd like to buy?

4. khan cotmaja set lesw, khun ca tham araj lik
After you have finished writing letters, what else are you going to do?

5. paj thura thfinan set lesw, khun ca tan paj thfinaj lik maj
After you have finished your business there, do you have to go anywhere else?

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill
1. khaw mii phanrajaa suaj le kenh
He has a beautiful and clever wife.

2. khaw mii banaasuaaj
He has a beautiful house.

707
3. kháw dâj khoncháj diî
   He has (got) good servants.

4. kháw mîî lûuksâaw súaj jûj juu khonnyû
   He has a beautiful daughter.

5. tîînân mîî râanaâháan diî jiû jûj râan nyû
   There is a good restaurant there.

6. tîînân mîî râankhâajkhoûn jáj jûj râan nyû
   There is a big store there.

   o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill
      (Reduplication indicates 'plurality')

1. kháw mîî bân súaj suûj lâaj lân
   He has many beautiful houses.

2. kháw mîî rôt ameerikan jàj jàj lâaj khan
   He has many big American cars.

3. kháw mîî lûuknûôñ kên kên diî diî lâaj khon
   He has many good and competent employees.

4. kháw mîî khôôñcháj diî diî lâaj jàan.
   He has many nice things to use.

5. kháw rûucàk râanaâháan diî diî thûuk thûuk lâaj hên
   He knows many inexpensive good restaurants.
6. This is a drill.
There are many good new schools there.

7. This is another drill.
There are many kinds of good, inexpensive things to choose from there.

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill
(Addition indicates 'generality')

1. I want to get a good book.

2. He needs a good friend.

3. I'll buy a big American car.

4. Please buy two yards of good beautiful Thai silk, in black for me.

5. I would like to get a competent good person to work for me.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill
(Addition strengthening of the base meanings)

1. This car is not big enough. I would like a big car.
2. บ้านใหญ่จำเก่งป้า. พอหม่าก้ก้บ้านเล็กเล็ก.
   This house is too big. I would like a **small** house.

3. หนังสือเล่มใหญ่จำเก่งป้า น้อย. พอหม่าก้ก้เล่มน้อย ๆ
   This book is a little bit too difficult. I would like an **easy** one.

4. ผ่าจำเย็นป้า. พอหม่าก้ก้เย็น ๆ
   This kind of material is too expensive. I would like a **cheap** kind.

5. กาฟเสทุ่มไม้แม่รองเลี้ย. พอหม่าก้ก้กาฟเสทุ่มรองรอง
   This cup of coffee is not hot. I'd like **hot** coffee.

---

r) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

(Replication softening the base meaning)

1. พอหม่าก้ก้ร้อนได้ติ้งี่สักกันน้อย
   I would like to get a fairly good car.

2. ชัวจ์สีหมาไก่ลูกตูกตาได้ห่างสิ่งบ่้
   Please buy me 50 Baht of rather big mangoes.

3. พู่จินก่อนน้น ผ่นก้อนด่านด่านที่ม็้กด่านม้าก
   That lady is a rather dark person but not very dark.

4. พอหม่าฝนร้อน ๆ หน้าก้มหัวกว่าผ่านป้ากันน้้
   I saw a whitish car pass by.

5. พอหม่ามาด้วยแม่หน้าน้อยเล่มน้น
   pen หน้าน้อยเล่มเล็กเล็กบานบาน.
   I remember that that book is a rather small thin book.
s) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill** (classifier specifies the object)

1. khun chāp rót khan nǎj. khan lēk rý khan jàj
   Which car do you like? The small one or the big one?

2. khāw ca châw lāŋ nǎj. lāŋ sīkhāaw rý sīkhāaw
   Which house is he going to rent? The green one or the white one?

3. nān̄s̄y khọ̱ng khun lêm nǎj, lêm kâw rý lêm māj
   Which book is yours? The old one or the new one?

4. khun ca aw pāakkaa an thūk rý an phsēŋ
   Does he want the cheap pen or the expensive one?

5. fe̱n khọ̱ng khâw khon nǎj (phûuŋjīŋ) khon sūaj rý khon māj sūaj
   Which one is his girl friend? The pretty one or the not (so) pretty one?

t) **Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single Adjective (Indicating kind or type)</th>
<th>Reduplicated Adjective (Indicating quality)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mamūaŋ sùk</td>
<td>mamūaŋ sùsùk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ripe mangoes</td>
<td>Mangoes which are (rather) ripe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaafse róon</td>
<td>kaafse róonróon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot coffee</td>
<td>The coffee which is quite hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nám jen</td>
<td>nám jenjen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold water</td>
<td>Water which is really cold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. ก๋องก้าว ก๋อง ก้าว
   Antiques Old things

5. ก๋องวาน ก๋อง วาน
   Dessert Sweet things

39.3 EXERCISES

1) Pretend you are shopping for fruit and ask for
   (a) 2 oranges and a bunch of bananas,
   (b) six mangosteens and one small watermelon,
   (c) 3 ripe mangoes,
   (d) 1 large papaya,
   (e) one small durian,
   (f) a sweet pineapple,
   (g) a bunch of rambuttans.

2) Pretend you are shopping and say to the salesperson
   "Please choose for me ______"
   (a) a good orange,
   (b) 3 sweet pineapples,
   (c) one large durian,
   (d) a big, sweet watermelon,
   (e) 2 kilos of beautiful mangosteens,
   (f) 3 baht worth of big ripe papayas,
   (g) 1 bunch of ripe bananas,
   (h) 3 rose apples,
   (i) 2 bunches of good rambuttans,
   (j) 1 bunch of langsas.
3) Student A says to Student B, "Where are you going?"

Student B replies, "I'm going to buy _____ for you."

Use different kinds of objects in your reply.

4) Student A: "I have _____ dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?"

Student B: "You'll get _______ baht."

39.4 VOCABULARY

bāj lā hāa 5 baht bank note
bēŋjāj small bill (change)
chōmphūu rose apple
chō bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
dōolāa dollar
f슨 girl or boy friend
hōk cēt 6 or 7
kēn too much
khāat shortage of, short (of)
khāat tua no bargaining
khōŋchāj things for use
klūaj banana
laāŋsàat bangsa (small fruit)
lûuk classifier for fruit
lûak to choose, pick out, select, elect
malakoo          papaya (fruit)
mamûaj          mango (fruit)
mânkhût          mangosteen (fruit)
mêskháa         salesperson (female)
ŋønthoon        change
ŋó             rambutan (fruit)
phíchaj         Phichai (male first name)
phimsêen        smelling salts
phôn            classifier for fruit
phônnlamáaj     fruit
phuan            bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
ráp             to take on, to eat (something)
rîyan           coin, dollars
rót             flavor
sák             a little, a bit
sák pradlaw      a minute
sanît           extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
sâpparót        pineapple
sèet satàan      change (in coin)
sôm             orange
sôm oo           pomelo
sôt             fresh (of fruit, etc.)

714
sùk             ripe
thẹŋmoo         watermelon
tháŋmòt         altogether
thfilēskŋen     place to exchange money
thůan           even, in round numbers
thúrian         durian (fruit)
wãan            sweet (in flavor)
wíi             bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas
THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON FORTY

40.0 BASIC DIALOG: Banking and Shopping Trip

A: khun mii bénjâj bân máj Do you have any change?
B: mii, têé máj thûng róoj èéù Baat
A: rrâñ, khoò jyym kòonn sák jiisip bâat, dâj máj Well, could I borrow 20 Baht, then?
khòpkhun màak Thank you.
B: wànnî ca paj nàj rûkhrâp You are going somewhere today?
A: ca paj thanakhaan To the bank.
B: paj fàak nèn rûkhrâp To deposit money?
A: plàaw, ca paj bèêk nèn No, to get some money out.
kkàp ca phaa phâyân fâráñ And I am also taking a 'farang'
paj lêek nênthaj düaj friend to change some money,
phrá ca paj sûy khoòñ kan Because we are going shopping.
phâyân khâw jàak sûy phâamâj She wants some Thai silk, a
thaj, khânnínèn silver bowl,
lèewkô chamsalât thîti tham And a wooden salad bowl.
dûaj màaj

40.1 BASIC DIALOG: (Part 2)

A: khun rûucàk ráändiidi thîi You know any good and inexpensive
mâj pheén nák bân máj shops?
B: ráan sînhkâathaj nàj khrâp Yes, the "Thai merchandise"
khûw mii khoòñthaj diidii shop.
sûajâaj hûj lyûk jë They have a large selection of
bûaj màaj beautiful and good things.
THAI BASIC COURSE

Their work is very good because they have good artisans.

That’s true, it just occurred to me.

By the way, are you going to go by "Nana Phan" shop?

Yes, could I get you something?

Could you buy some flashlight batteries for me?

How many do you want?

Two, and three sixty-watt light bulbs.

Here’s the money.

Don’t bother about it yet, because I don’t know how much it’s going to be.

40.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) ̀bèek nèn means 'to get money (from the bank)' either by (a) taking money out of an account: thoon nèn or (b) by cashing a check: aw chék pàj khûn nèn

b) ̀thûn is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached. When used as a main verb, it means 'to reach, get to' or 'to be as much as (with amounts)'.

mii bènjàj tèe màj ̀thûn ròj bàat
I have change but not as much as 100 baht.
c) jé, jé, jéjé means 'to be a great deal, a lot, plenty.' It frequently replaces màak in colloquial speech in the sense of 'large number or quantity', but not in the sense of 'very'.

kháw nii khon dlì dlì jé 'He has lots of good things.'

d) rì myy means (a) 'craftsmanship' as in tô tua nii rìmyy dlì

'This table is well made (good craftsmanship)' and (b) 'manual skill' chàan rì myy dlì 'a skilled craftman'. Note that kháw rìmyy dlì and rìmyy kháw dlì mean the same thing. (See 37.2b)

e) kóon in the sentence khóo jýym kóon is used to emphasize the fact that the loan is to be of very short duration. (The speaker is emphasizing that he really doesn't need a loan, but there seems to be no other solution, since the other person doesn't have change for his bank note.)

f) sák (sàk) means 'merely, just, as little as'. It normally precedes a number or a quantitative expression and implies that the speaker considers the number or amount referred to as not very large.

Borrower: khóo jýym nên sák rôoj bâat

'Could I borrow 100 baht?' (I'm sure you will let me have it, since it's such a small amount.)

tân means 'as much as, as many as'. It is used in the same types of constructions as sák but it implies that the speaker considers the amount referred to as quite large, hence the prospective lender might respond to the above request with

tân rôoj bâat chîaw rê 'a hundred baht!'

(That's a lot of money!)

(g) In sentences like chûaj sÿ thàan fajchaa jâh dûaj, dûaj has the meaning 'since you are going to be doing something anyway, it won't be too much trouble for you to do me a favor too, would it?'

718
h) รัก is used when pointing to something that has been sought.
   A: ขุนคือคนชอบรัก  'Which one's John?'
   B: คนนี้นักเรียน  'That one. (pointing at him).'

40.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) ช่าง means a person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds like the following:

ช่างตัดผม 'barber': ช่าง + ตัดผม 'to cut hair'
ช่างตัดเสื้อ 'tailor': ช่าง + ตัดเสื้อ 'to cut (out) clothing'
ช่างทอง 'jeweler': ช่าง + ทอง 'gold'
ช่างถ่ายรูป 'photographer': ช่าง + ถ่ายรูป 'take pictures'
ช่างไม้ 'carpenter': ช่าง + ไม้ 'wood'
ช่างอ้อย 'nielloware maker': ช่าง + อ้อย 'make nielloware'
ช่างแกะสลัก 'carver': ช่าง + แกะสลัก 'to carve'

b) Completive verbs\(^1\) in Thai are somewhat similar to certain types of adverbs in English that occur with verbs and form constructions having a completely different meaning, such as figure out, bring up, etc., except that in Thai the completive verb usually indicates that the action referred to in the main verb was brought to conclusion, thus คิด 'to think' and คิด ดอก 'to figure out'. If the result of the action is unsuccessful, the negative is placed before the completive, not the main verb:

คิดไม่ดี ดอก 'didn't succeed in figuring it out'
จุ๊บดีมาก. พอ คิด ดอก 'It's very difficult. I can't figure it out.'
พอ ไทย ดอก 状元 'I can't recall where he lives.'

\(^1\)Noss, page 125 ff.
c) In English use of the personal pronoun immediately after its noun antecedent, such as *Mary she*, or *my friend he*, etc. is considered substandard English. This is not the case in Thai. Examples of this type (in the third person) are very common. The choice of pronoun is dependent on the degree of intimacy and the relative status levels of the speaker and the person referred to.

(a) ประณัก ภรรยา  '(my) friend he'
not intimate, about equal status

(b) ลูกพ่อ ลูกบุญ  'my children they'
intimate, equal status

(c) คุณ พระราชทาน  'Mr. Prapas he'
Least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker

d) Borrow and lend are related in Thai in much the same way as in English. Observe the examples below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>ฆ้อง</th>
<th>จั่ยม</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Lender</th>
<th>(Amount)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khun A</td>
<td>ฆ้อง</td>
<td>จั่ยม</td>
<td>นงน</td>
<td>khun B</td>
<td>10 บาท</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. A</td>
<td>asks to borrow money</td>
<td>from Mr. B</td>
<td>10 ฿</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Mr. A asks Mr. B for the loan of 10 baht.'

Compare the above with this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>หำจ</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>จั่ยม</th>
<th>(Amount)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khun A</td>
<td>หำจ</td>
<td>นงน</td>
<td>khun B</td>
<td>จั่ยม</td>
<td>5.บาท</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. A</td>
<td>gave money</td>
<td>(to) Mr. B</td>
<td>to borrow</td>
<td>5 ฿</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Mr. A lent Mr. B five baht.'

1Noss, page 100 ff.
e) *fàak* is used to indicate that you are entrusting some task to another person or something to an institution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(NP)</th>
<th>fàak</th>
<th>(NP)</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(phôm)</td>
<td>fàak</td>
<td>(khun)</td>
<td>sûy jaa dûaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>entrust</td>
<td>(you)</td>
<td>to buy medicine (for me) too</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Could you buy some medicine (for me) too.'

In sentences like the following:

phôm ca sýy sýa sûaj sûaj paj fàak phanrajaa phôm
'I'll buy pretty dresses to give to my wife!'

*fàak* means only 'to give to'.

f) The following construction is used to indicate what material an object is made of:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NP</th>
<th>tham</th>
<th>dûaj</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tô tuaní</td>
<td>tham</td>
<td>dûaj</td>
<td>màaj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'This table is made of wood.'

Other materials such as *nên* 'silver', *máaj sàk* 'teak', *lèk* 'iron', *kradàat* 'paper', or *kracôk* 'glass'.

The construction above is also used in a limited number of cases to indicate the instrument that was used in making something, as in this example:

krapâw bajnán tham dûaj mYY  'That bag is hand-made.'

In place of *mYY*, khryâñ(câk) 'machine' could be used.
40.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Sentence Construction Drill

**Cue**

1. kháw, n̄n,
   rōoj bāat
   He, money, 100 Baht

2. khun, bēnjāj
   sīp bāat
   You, change, ten Baht

3. kháw, n̄n fāak, thanakhaan,
   lāan bāat
   He, money in the bank, one million baht

4. roongrian nîl, nákrian,
   roōj khon.
   This school, students, 100.

5. nānsamùt nîl, nānsîy, hāa roōj.
   This library, books, 500.

6. khun, weelaa,
   khryn chūamoön.
   You, time, half an hour.

**Pattern**

kháw mîi n̄n thỳn rōoj bāat māj
Does he have as much as 100 Baht?

khun mîi bēnjāj thỳn sīp bāat māj
Do you have as much as 10 Baht change?

kháw mîi n̄n fāak thanakhaan thỳn lāan bāat māj
Does he have as much as one million Baht in the bank?

roongrian nîl mîi nákrian thỳn roōj khon māj
Are there as many as 100 students in this school?

nānsamùt nîl mîi nānsîy thỳn hāa roōj lêm māj
Are there as many as 500 books in this library?

khun mîi weelaa thỳn khryn chūamoön māj
Do you have as much as half an hour?
b) **Substitution Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cues</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. _TREE, ROOJ BAAT</td>
<td>PHOM MI _TREE MAJ THYN ROOJ BAAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Money, one hundred Baht.</td>
<td>I don't have as much as 100 Baht in change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. _TREE FAAK THANAAKAAN,</td>
<td>PHOM MI _TREE FAAK THANAAKAAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NYN PHAN BAAT.</td>
<td>MAJ THYN NYN PHAN BAAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Money in the bank,</td>
<td>I don't have as much as one thousand Baht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 BAHT.</td>
<td>in the bank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. NAKRIAN, ROOJ KHON.</td>
<td>PHOM MI  NAKRIAN MAJ THYN ROOJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students, 100.</td>
<td>KHON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don't have as many as 100 students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. KHON CHUAJ, SLP KHON.</td>
<td>PHOM MI  KHON CHUAJ MAJ THYN SLP KHON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helpers, ten.</td>
<td>I don't have as many as 10 helpers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. WEE LA LYA, NYN DYAN.</td>
<td>PHOM MI  WEE LA LYA MAJ THYN NYN DYAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time left, one month</td>
<td>I have less than a month left.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill**

1. **KHAW SIA KHAA CHAW BAN DYN LA MAJ THYN SAAAM PHAN BAAT.**
   He pays for the rent less than three thousand Baht a month.

2. **KHAW MI _TREE FAAK THANAKHAAN MAJ THYN LAAAN BAAT.**
   He doesn't have as much as one million Baht in the bank.
3. khâw mil weelaa lîya lîk mâj thỳŋ dyan.
   He has only less than a month left.

4. phôm thamnâan thînīfî (maa) dâj mâj thỳŋ pîi.
   I have worked here less than a year.

5. khâw phën sîy rôt khan nîî dâj mâj thỳŋ pîi.
   He's just bought this car less than a year ago.

d) Substitutuion Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khôo jyum nêng sák jîslîp bâat dâj máj</td>
<td>May I borrow twenty baht?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nângsîyphîm, pradîtaw.</td>
<td>khôo jyum nângsîyphîm sák pradîtaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I borrow your newspaper for a few minutes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rôt, khrîn chûamoôn.</td>
<td>khôo jyum rôt sák khrîn chûamoôn, dâj máj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I borrow your car for only half an hour?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pàakaa, nỳŋ, dâm.</td>
<td>khôo jyum pàakaa sák dâm, dâj máj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I borrow a pen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nângsîy lêm nîî, sîcîn wan.</td>
<td>khôo jyum nângsîy lêm nîî sák sîcîn wan, dâj máj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I borrow this book for two days?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nângsîy dîi dîi, sîcîn lêm.</td>
<td>khôo jyum nângsîy dîi dîi sák sîcîn lêm, dâj máj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I borrow two good books?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

724
Transformation Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

Example I:
A: ฅนจ่ายเงิน sắcสิบบาท, ดายมาจ
May I borrow 10 baht?
B: ดาย
O.K.

Example II:
A: ฅนจ่ายเงิน sắcสิบบาท, ดายมาจ
Could I borrow ten baht from you?
B: มาจดาย
No

1. A: ฅนจ่ายเงินผาคาาสิบด้าม, ดายมาจ
Could I borrow a pen?
B: มาจดาย
No

2. A: ฅนจ่ายเงินน้ำง้ย์ปิมแชบัพนิ่นนองจ, ด้ายมาจ
May I borrow this newspaper?
B: ดาย
O.K.
3. A:  kʰɔ̄ jyvm náŋsũy sák sɔ̄ɔŋ lêm, dᵃj máj
      may I borrow two

      B:  dᵃj
      Yes.

      May I borrow a pen?

      B:  máj dᵃj
      No.

5. A:  kʰɔ̄ jyvm khr̥yɑ̃ phimdlit sák d̥aw,
      dᵃj máj
      May I borrow your typewriter for a few minutes?

      B:  aw sî khr̥áp
      You may take it.

6. A:  kʰɔ̄ jyvm khr̥yɑ̃ āt th̥e̥ep sák chũamooŋ,
      dᵃj máj
      May I borrow the tape recorder for an hour?

      B:  khɔ̄othɔ̄ot důaj, phɔ̄m tɔɔŋ cháj khr̥áp
      Sorry, I have to use it.
f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun coon kháw máj ãàk paj
   John doesn't want to go.

2. lûuk phôm kês chôop khôon wàañwàan
   My children like sweet things.

3. naaj phôm kháw máj chôop háj phôm paj sàaj
   My boss doesn't like me to be late.

4. phanrajaa phôm kês chôop bàan lân níi
   My wife likes this house.

5. naajók thâan máj wàañ
   The prime minister is busy.

6. dèk khon nán kês maa jùu thìnìi naan
   That child has been here a long time.

g) Sentence Construction Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chaamsalàt bajníi, máaj</td>
<td>chaamsalàt bajníi tham dùaj máaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This salad bowl, wood</td>
<td>This salad bowl is made of wood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khăn bajníi, ñën</td>
<td>khăn bajníi tham dùaj ñën.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This bowl, silver</td>
<td>This bowl is made of silver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tó tuaníi, máajsàk</td>
<td>tó tuaníi tham dùaj májsàk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This table, teak</td>
<td>This table is made of teak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thûaj bajníi, pláatsatìk</td>
<td>thûaj bajníi tham dùaj pláatsatìk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This cup, plastic</td>
<td>This cup is made of plastic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. คล่องบุหรี่บั้งน้ำ, ทอง
    This cigarette box, gold
    คล่องบุหรี่บั้งน้ำที่ทำด้วยทอง.
    This cigarette box is made of gold.

6. ถุงใจน้ำ, กระดาษน้ำตาลปีษ
    This bag, newspaper
    ถุงใจน้ำที่ทำด้วยกระดาษน้ำตาลปีษ.
    This bag is made of newspaper.

h) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1
1. ฝ่ายสมัยฆ่าดี
    ฝ่ายสมัยดี
    khâw fûmyy dîi
    His work is good.

2. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างตัดผ้า
    ช่างตัดผ้า
    châañ têatsapp khonnîi dîi
    This tailor (dressmaker) is good.

3. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างตัดผม
    ช่างตัดผม
    châañ têapphm khonnîi fûmyy mâj dîi
    This barber is not good.

4. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างทอง
    ช่างทอง
    châañ thoon khonnîi dîi
    This jeweler is good.

5. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างถ่ายรูป
    ช่างถ่ายรูป
    châañ thàây àrûp khonnîi mâj dîi
    This photographer is not good.

6. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างสาม
    ช่างสาม
    châañ mâj khonnîi fûmyy dîi
    This carpenter is good.

7. ฝ่ายสมัยช่างธีม
    ช่างธีม
    châañ thôm khonnîi fûmyy dîi
    This nielloware maker is good.
8. rûmûn chān kèsalâk khonní dii. chān kèsalâk khonní rûmûn dii. This carver is good.

1) **Completion Drill** *(Complete the sentences with a compound beginning as châan.)*

1. khon thîi mîi aachîip tham khrûñyryan rîak wâa.............
   (Answer: châanmáaj).
   A person who earns his living by making furniture is called
   ................. (Answer: a cabinet maker.)

2. khon thîi mîi aachîip tàtphôm rîak wâa................
   (Answer: châanthàtphôm).
   A person who earns his living by cutting one’s hair is called
   .................. (Answer: a barber).

3. khon thîi mîi aachîip tàtsỳa rîak wâa................
   (Answer: châantàtsỳa).
   A person who earns his living by making clothes is called
   .................. (Answer: a tailor).

4. khon thîi mîi aachîip tham khrûñythoon rîak wâa...........
   (Answer: châanthoon).
   A person who earns a living by making jewelry or gold
   ornaments is called............... (Answer: a goldsmith).

5. khon thîi mîi aachîip thaañ kèsalàk rîak wâa..........  
   (Answer: chān kèsalâk).
   A person who earns his living by carving things is called
   ................... (Answer: a carver).

6. khon thîi mîi aachîip thaañ wîththajû rîak wâa...........
   (Answer: châanwitthajû).
   A person who earns his living by working in the field of
   radio is called....... (Answer: a radio repairman).
7. khon thi mii aachfip thaan fajfáa rïak wâa................
...............(Answer: châañ fajfáa).
A person who earns his living in the field of electricity is called...........(Answer: an electrician).

J) Sentence Construction Drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Continued Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khun ca phàan râan</td>
<td>sýy jaa</td>
<td>fàak sýy jaa dûaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khâaj jaa máj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going by</td>
<td>Buy some</td>
<td>May I ask you to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the drug store?</td>
<td>medicine.</td>
<td>some medicine for me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. khun ca phàan</td>
<td>sýy khôn</td>
<td>fàak sýy khôn dûaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talàat máj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going to go</td>
<td>Buy some-</td>
<td>I'd like you to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by the market?</td>
<td>thing.</td>
<td>something for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun ca wé hônkoñ</td>
<td>sýy klôn</td>
<td>fàak sýy klôn thàaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máj</td>
<td>thàaj rûup</td>
<td>rûup sàk klôn dûaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going to stop</td>
<td>Buy a cam-</td>
<td>I'd like you to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over in Hongkong?</td>
<td>era.</td>
<td>a camera for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun ca paj talàat</td>
<td>sýy kàpkhâaw</td>
<td>fàak sýy kàpkhâaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rôkhráp</td>
<td></td>
<td>dûaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're going to the</td>
<td>Buy me some</td>
<td>May I ask you to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market?</td>
<td>food.</td>
<td>some food for me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun ca phàan</td>
<td>sôñ côtmâaj</td>
<td>fàak sôñ côt mäaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prajsanii máj</td>
<td></td>
<td>dûaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going to go</td>
<td>Mail a let-</td>
<td>Could you mail a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by the post</td>
<td>ter.</td>
<td>letter for me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khun ca paj râan</td>
<td>sýy kaafse</td>
<td>fàak sýy kaafse dûaj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaafse rîy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're going to the</td>
<td>Buy some</td>
<td>Could you get some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the coffee shop?</td>
<td>coffee.</td>
<td>coffee for me?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. khun ca paj thanakhaan rây
   You're going to the bank?

k) **Response Drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Cue</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun ca sîy araj paj faak khâw</td>
<td>nánṣy y dii dii sâk sōn lêm.</td>
<td>phôm ca sîy nánṣy y dii dii paj faak khâw sâk sōn lêm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to buy (as a present) for him?</td>
<td>Two good books.</td>
<td>I'll buy two good books for him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. khun ca sîy araj paj faak phanrajâa khun</td>
<td>sîa sûaj sûaj</td>
<td>phôm ca sîy sîa sûaj sûaj paj faak phanrajâa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you going to buy (as a souvenir) for your wife?</td>
<td>Beautiful blouses (dresses)</td>
<td>I'll buy beautiful dresses for my wife.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. weilâa khun klâp paj bân, khun ca syy araj paj faak lûuk sâaw khun</td>
<td>khôn lên</td>
<td>phôm ca sîy khôn lên paj faak lûuk sâaw phôm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you go home, what are you going to buy (as a souvenir) for your daughter?</td>
<td>Toys.</td>
<td>I'm going to buy some toys for my daughter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. weilâa khun klâp paj myânthaj, khun ca syy araj paj faak phanrajâa khun</td>
<td>khryânçhâj fajfäa</td>
<td>phôm ca sîy khryânçhâj fajfäa paj faak phanrajâa phôm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you go back to Thailand, what are you going to buy (as a present) for your wife?</td>
<td>Electrical appliances</td>
<td>I'll buy some electrical appliances for my wife.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. weelaa khun paj tookiaw, wíthajú phôm ca sýy wíthajú
   khun ca sýy araį jíipun an jíipun an lékľék maa
   maa fàak phôm bāan. lékľék, fàak khun nỳŋ khıyąŋ
   nỳŋ khıyąŋ
When you go to
Tokyo, what things
are you going to buy
(as souvenirs from
Tokyo) for me?
A rather small Jap-
anese radio

1) Recognition and Familiarization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. khun rúucāk ráan diidíi bāanmáj</td>
<td>ráan thaj nājalkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know any good stores?</td>
<td>Yes, &quot;Thai&quot; store's the one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. rőt khônkhun jùu thînâj</td>
<td>nīi nājkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is your car?</td>
<td>Right here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. khun sōmsāk khonnâj</td>
<td>khonnān nājkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which one is Mr. Somsak?</td>
<td>That one there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. khun hên nānsỳy phôm máj</td>
<td>jùu nān nājkhráp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you see my book?</td>
<td>Right there (Don't you see it?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. khâw maa rýplâaw</td>
<td>maa, jyyn jùu nān nājkhráp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did he come?</td>
<td>Yes, he's standing right there. (Don't you see him?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun ca phàan talâat máj. fàak sýy khôn dûaj.
   Are you going to go buy the market? Could you get me something?
2. Khun ca wé tookiaw màj. fàak sýy khôn dûaj.
   Are you going to stop over Tokyo? Could I have you buy something for me?

3. Khun ca paj sýy kaafse rêsà. fàak sýy dûaj nỳŋ thûaj.
   You are going to buy coffee? Could you get a cup for me too?

   You are going to the post office? Could you mail this letter for me?

5. Khun ca paj hása khun cím rês. fàak náŋsýy lêmníi paj hàj khaw dûaj.
   You are going to see Jim? Could you take this book to him also?

6. Khun ca paj rán khàaj phàa rês. chûaj sýy phàa hàj dûaj.
   You are going to the fabric shop? Could you buy some material for me too?

7. Khun ca paj bân khâw, châj màj. chûaj bòok khâw dûaj wâa phôm paj màj dâj.
   You are going to his house, aren’t you? Please tell him that I can’t go.

8. Khun ca paj hàa naajnàa rês. chûaj thàam khâw dûaj wâa bân làm nàn khâachâw thàwràj.
   You are going to see the agent? Please ask him (also) how much the rent for that house is.

   You are going to see Mr. Prasit? Please take this book to him also.
40.5 EXERCISES

1. Pairs of students will ask and answer questions of each other eliciting information like the following:

   (a) Does one student have as much/many as $3,000; 50 baht; 2,000 books; etc.

   (b) Does one student have as much as $3,000; 36,000 baht; 40,000 baht; $100,000 deposited in the bank?

2. Two students discuss their monthly salary. The first member of the pair indicates that he finds his salary quite small. The second student is impressed by the size of it.

3. Two students discuss the length, size, or cost of various objects. In each case one takes the position that the amount given is not very much, while the other takes the position that it is quite a lot.

4. Discuss the monthly bill for rent, gas, water, and electricity in the same manner as in 3.

5. Student A asks to borrow various objects ($10, a pen, 2 books, his car, a tape recorder, a typewriter, etc.). Student B indicates that he will lend A some of the items, but not all.

6. Student C asks Student B what Student A wanted to borrow and if he lent these things to him. When B indicates that he lent him some of the things, C asks why he didn't lend A the other objects.

7. Student A asks Student B what material some object (a table, a chair, a shirt, a glass, a tie, etc.) is made of. B responds. Then A asks him if it is hand-made or machine made.

8. Students will discuss the craftsmanship of various kinds in different countries (woodcarving in Germany, nielloware in Thailand, etc.)
9. Students will find out from the instructor what the Thais call sculptors, watch repairmen, hair dressers, weavers, boat builders, house painters, carpenters, printers, etc.

10. Student A asks Student B if he is going to some particular place. When B indicates that he is, A asks him to do some thing (buy something, etc.) for him, indicating that since he is going there anyway it won't be any trouble for him to do him a favor.

11. One student asks another what he plans to buy (as a present) in Thailand for his mother, or his older sister, or his material aunt, or some other relative.

12. Student A asks about the location of some object, or the identity of some person in the classroom. Student B indicates his surprise and points it out to him.

13. Student A plays the part of a bank teller and Student B that of a customer. They discuss withdrawing and depositing money in the bank.

   (Below is a facsimile of a Thai check.)

```
| เลขที่  ................ |
| ชื่อธนาคารของ .......... |
| จ่ายให้  .................. ป ............ |
| จำนวนเงิน  ......................... บาท     |

```

735
40.6 VOCABULARY

aachëip
profession

ät
to tape, to copy

æ
by the way

(khít Ḗok
(out (a compleitive verb)
(ný̠k)

bèek
to withdraw (money),
to requisition (as from a storeroom)

bèek ṛén
to get money (from the bank)

chāañ-
A person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds.

chāañ këssalàk (khon)
carver

chāañ máaj (khon)
carpenter

chāañ tätphôm (khon)
barber

chāañ tāts̪ya (khon)
tailor

chāañ thàajrûup (khon)
photographer

chāañ thôm (khon)
nielloware maker

chāañ thon̪ (khon)
jeweler

chaam salày (baj̪, lûuk)
salad bowl

chiaw rë
that's a lot of (something)

cin̪ ná
That's true.

dûaj
also, too, as well

fàak
to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you
fàak ṭen  to deposit money (in the bank)
ří myy  manual skill, craftsmanship
hâj jyym  to let someone borrow, to lend
hoŋkoŋ  Hong Kong
jé/jéjé  to be a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
kees  he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status
kèssalàk  to carve
khànnẽn  silver bowl
khâw  he, she, they (third person) not intimate, about equal status
khît òok  to figure out
khœo jyym/jyym  to borrow
khœø lën (jà àn)  toys
khryañ (cák) (an)  machine
khryañ àttheép (an)  tape recorder
khyn ṭen  to cash a check
kœon  used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kracôk (baan, phên)  'glass'
łèek  'iron, steel'
lòot fajfaá (lòot)  light bulb
máaj  wood
máaj sàk  
teak
myy (myy)  
hand

naajók  
prime minister (short form)

naajók rátthamontríi (thán)  
prime minister (official name)

naanaaphan  
Nanaphan (name of a shop)

núk ŏok  
think about, can recall, can remember;
to be able to recall to memory

nênbèek  
a deposit (in a bank)

phaa  
to take, escort

pláatsatìk  
plastic

phên  
just (immediately before)

resnthian  
watt (measure of electricity)

sînkháa thaj  
Thai merchandise

syy...{paj ...fàak  
to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone

tãŋ  
as much as, as many as

tài  
to cut

thàaj rùup  
take pictures

thàanfajchaaj (kôn)  
flashlight batteries

tham düaj......  
made of

thân  
he, she, they (third person) least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker

thôm  
to make nielloware

thoon  
gold

thỳŋ  
is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached
## BASIC COURSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language (set)</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amharic (Units 1-50)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amharic (Units 51-60)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian (Units 1-45)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian (Units 46-90)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese (Units 1-30)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinyanja (Units 1-63)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French (set) (Units 1-12)</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French (set) (Units 13-24)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fula (Units 1-40)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German (Units 1-12)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German (Units 13-24)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek (Vol. I)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek (Vol. II)</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek (Vol. III)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew (Units 1-40)</td>
<td>$5.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian (Units 1-12)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian (Units 13-24)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirundi (Units 1-30)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kituba (Units 1-35)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean (Vol. I)</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean (Vol. II)</td>
<td>$4.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lao (Vol. I)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala (Units 1-24)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luganda (Lessons 1-94)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moré (Units 1-48)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian (Units 1-25)</td>
<td>$3.50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian (Units 26-50)</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shona (Units 1-49)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (set) (Units 1-15)</td>
<td>$12.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (set) (Units 16-30)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (Units 31-45)</td>
<td>$3.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (Units 46-55)</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swahili (Units 1-150)</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thai (Units 1-20)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thai (Units 21-40)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish (Units 1-30)</td>
<td>$3.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish (Units 31-50)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twi (Units 1-20)</td>
<td>$1.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese (Vol. I)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese (Vol. II)</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoruba (Units 1-49)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Finnish Graded Reader $4.50
* French Supplemental Exercises $3.25
* Hindi-An Active Introduction
* Hungarian Graded Reader $3.75
* Indonesian Newspaper Reader $1.75
* Luganda Pretraining Program
* Modern Written Arabic $4.00
* Spanish Programmatic Course
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual - Vol. I) $0.75
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook - Vol. I) $2.25
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual - Vol. II)
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook - Vol. II)
* Swahili General Conversation $0.75
* Swahili Geography $0.65
* Thai Reference Grammar $1.25
* Turkish Graded Reader
* Vietnamese Familiarization
* Course $1.75
* Yoruba Intermediate Texts $1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.